

Chuyên đề I PHÁT ÂM

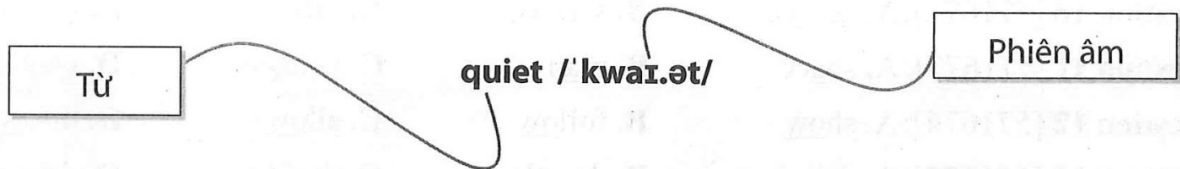
PRONUNCIATION

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. PHIÊN ÂM

1. Phiên âm là gì?

Cách phát âm các từ trong tiếng Anh được chuẩn hóa dưới dạng các phiên âm quốc tế. Các bạn có thể nhận thấy ví dụ điển hình của các âm này khi tra từ trong từ điển.



Khi phát âm từ, chúng ta cần dựa vào phiên âm của từ đó. Các âm trong tiếng Anh được hệ thống thành IPA - bảng kí hiệu ngữ âm quốc tế như bảng dưới đây.

VOWELS	MONOPHTHONGS				DIPHTHONGS		Phonemic chart	
	ɪː sheep	ɪ ship	ʊ book	uː food	ɪə here	eɪ stay		
	e bed	ə teacher	ɜː bird	ɔː door	ʊə tourist	ɔɪ boy		
	æ bad	ʌ up	ɑː far	ɒ on	eə hair	aɪ my		
CONSONANTS	p pea	b boat	t tea	d dog	tʃ cheese	dʒ June	k car	g go
	f fly	v video	θ think	ð that	s see	z zoo	ʃ shall	ʒ television
	m mean	n now	ŋ sing	h hat	l love	r red	w wet	j yes

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

- A. area B. arrange C. arrive D. allow
- A. floor B. door C. noodles D. board
- A. eight B. weight C. height D. straight
- A. doubt B. found C. sound D. touch
- A. head B. heat C. leave D. cheap

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 6. A. <u>face</u> | B. <u>delay</u> | C. <u>stay</u> | D. <u>prepare</u> |
| 7. A. <u>beach</u> | B. <u>ready</u> | C. <u>meat</u> | D. <u>peach</u> |
| 8. A. <u>right</u> | B. <u>private</u> | C. <u>realise</u> | D. <u>illness</u> |
| 9. A. <u>enough</u> | B. <u>country</u> | C. <u>through</u> | D. <u>encourage</u> |
| 10. A. <u>device</u> | B. <u>service</u> | C. <u>office</u> | D. <u>practice</u> |
| 11. A. <u>space</u> | B. <u>plan</u> | C. <u>volcano</u> | D. <u>lazy</u> |
| 12. A. <u>show</u> | B. <u>follow</u> | C. <u>allow</u> | D. <u>throw</u> |
| 13. A. <u>delicious</u> | B. <u>decade</u> | C. <u>decide</u> | D. <u>departure</u> |
| 14. A. <u>afraid</u> | B. <u>agree</u> | C. <u>about</u> | D. <u>always</u> |
| 15. A. <u>pure</u> | B. <u>put</u> | C. <u>full</u> | D. <u>push</u> |
| 16. A. <u>farmer</u> | B. <u>smart</u> | C. <u>liar</u> | D. <u>March</u> |
| 17. A. <u>wash</u> | B. <u>chocolate</u> | C. <u>shopping</u> | D. <u>actor</u> |
| 18. A. <u>mirror</u> | B. <u>circle</u> | C. <u>first</u> | D. <u>dirty</u> |
| 19. A. <u>share</u> | B. <u>square</u> | C. <u>are</u> | D. <u>compare</u> |
| 20. A. <u>luxury</u> | B. <u>type</u> | C. <u>pyramid</u> | D. <u>chemistry</u> |
| 21. A. <u>appear</u> | B. <u>pear</u> | C. <u>clear</u> | D. <u>dear</u> |
| 22. A. <u>potato</u> | B. <u>concentrate</u> | C. <u>lately</u> | D. <u>gather</u> |
| 23. A. <u>flood</u> | B. <u>food</u> | C. <u>bamboo</u> | D. <u>choose</u> |
| 24. A. <u>pour</u> | B. <u>our</u> | C. <u>discount</u> | D. <u>loud</u> |
| 25. A. <u>layer</u> | B. <u>frame</u> | C. <u>artisan</u> | D. <u>place</u> |
| 26. A. <u>dentist</u> | B. <u>visit</u> | C. <u>finish</u> | D. <u>besides</u> |
| 27. A. <u>breath</u> | B. <u>meat</u> | C. <u>teach</u> | D. <u>beach</u> |
| 28. A. <u>reason</u> | B. <u>clear</u> | C. <u>mean</u> | D. <u>please</u> |
| 29. A. <u>course</u> | B. <u>court</u> | C. <u>courage</u> | D. <u>pour</u> |
| 30. A. <u>pleasure</u> | B. <u>peanut</u> | C. <u>heavy</u> | D. <u>deafness</u> |
| 31. A. <u>cleanse</u> | B. <u>clean</u> | C. <u>treatment</u> | D. <u>meaning</u> |
| 32. A. <u>driven</u> | B. <u>knife</u> | C. <u>kitten</u> | D. <u>windmill</u> |
| 33. A. <u>departure</u> | B. <u>decision</u> | C. <u>definition</u> | D. <u>delay</u> |
| 34. A. <u>value</u> | B. <u>useful</u> | C. <u>music</u> | D. <u>currency</u> |
| 35. A. <u>invite</u> | B. <u>polite</u> | C. <u>iron</u> | D. <u>signal</u> |
| 36. A. <u>graduate</u> | B. <u>concentrate</u> | C. <u>climate</u> | D. <u>investigate</u> |
| 37. A. <u>parrot</u> | B. <u>conclude</u> | C. <u>compete</u> | D. <u>scholar</u> |
| 38. A. <u>young</u> | B. <u>cousin</u> | C. <u>double</u> | D. <u>found</u> |
| 39. A. <u>bomb</u> | B. <u>climb</u> | C. <u>liveable</u> | D. <u>doubt</u> |
| 40. A. <u>sing</u> | B. <u>business</u> | C. <u>minute</u> | D. <u>sister</u> |
| 41. A. <u>talent</u> | B. <u>fortress</u> | C. <u>talk</u> | D. <u>walk</u> |

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 42. A. <u>h</u> oliday | B. <u>p</u> otato | C. <u>p</u> otential | D. <u>p</u> romote |
| 43. A. <u>g</u> lobal | B. <u>o</u> pen | C. <u>o</u> perate | D. <u>s</u> howcase |
| 44. A. <u>e</u> vent | B. <u>b</u> etween | C. <u>p</u> retend | D. <u>d</u> espite |
| 45. A. <u>f</u> inger | B. <u>b</u> lind | C. <u>t</u> hink | D. <u>r</u> ing |
| 46. A. <u>p</u> assion | B. <u>n</u> ation | C. <u>s</u> tatement | D. <u>p</u> atient |
| 47. A. <u>i</u> ntend | B. <u>t</u> ender | C. <u>d</u> epend | D. <u>l</u> isten |
| 48. A. <u>d</u> rought | B. <u>o</u> ught | C. <u>b</u> rought | D. <u>t</u> hought |
| 49. A. <u>s</u> implify | B. <u>c</u> ompany | C. <u>t</u> rophy | D. <u>v</u> ariety |
| 50. A. <u>d</u> isappear | B. <u>p</u> repare | C. <u>d</u> evelop | D. <u>p</u> epper |

Exercise 2. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>ch</u> emistry | B. <u>ch</u> icken | C. <u>ch</u> urch | D. <u>ch</u> ores |
| 2. A. <u>o</u> cean | B. <u>s</u> ure | C. <u>s</u> ugar | D. <u>s</u> un |
| 3. A. <u>w</u> eather | B. <u>th</u> erefore | C. <u>e</u> arthquake | D. <u>w</u> ith |
| 4. A. <u>h</u> oney | B. <u>h</u> onest | C. <u>h</u> urry | D. <u>h</u> armful |
| 5. A. <u>co</u> mb | B. <u>ga</u> mbles | C. <u>pl</u> umber | D. <u>cl</u> imb |
| 6. A. <u>c</u> oncert | B. <u>c</u> ulture | C. <u>c</u> ircle | D. <u>c</u> omfort |
| 7. A. <u>bro</u> ther | B. <u>bre</u> ath | C. <u>ei</u> ther | D. <u>clo</u> thes |
| 8. A. <u>re</u> ason | B. <u>re</u> sort | C. <u>s</u> olution | D. <u>po</u> isonous |
| 9. A. <u>ch</u> arity | B. <u>head</u> ache | C. <u>watch</u> ing | D. <u>ch</u> ampion |
| 10. A. <u>h</u> umor | B. <u>h</u> our | C. <u>h</u> istory | D. <u>h</u> obby |
| 11. A. <u>ca</u> st | B. <u>ci</u> te | C. <u>c</u> old | D. <u>c</u> up |
| 12. A. <u>acc</u> ount | B. <u>acc</u> ident | C. <u>ac</u> cept | D. <u>suc</u> ceed |
| 13. A. <u>g</u> ap | B. <u>g</u> eneration | C. <u>g</u> arden | D. <u>pag</u> oda |
| 14. A. <u>h</u> urt | B. <u>h</u> armless | C. <u>h</u> our | D. <u>h</u> ippo |
| 15. A. <u>enough</u> | B. <u>to</u> ugh | C. <u>th</u> ough | D. <u>la</u> ugh |
| 16. A. <u>ch</u> ange | B. <u>ch</u> ildren | C. <u>ch</u> urch | D. <u>mach</u> ine |
| 17. A. <u>enough</u> | B. <u>la</u> ugh | C. <u>to</u> ugh | D. <u>th</u> rough |
| 18. A. <u>lo</u> vely | B. <u>w</u> alk | C. <u>p</u> ilot | D. <u>lan</u> dscape |
| 19. A. <u>ans</u> wer | B. <u>s</u> weet | C. <u>w</u> rong | D. <u>w</u> hom |
| 20. A. <u>Ch</u> ristmas | B. <u>sto</u> mach | C. <u>sch</u> ool | D. <u>ch</u> allenge |
| 21. A. <u>s</u> uitable | B. <u>s</u> omeone | C. <u>le</u> isure | D. <u>pa</u> sta |
| 22. A. <u>th</u> ank | B. <u>th</u> ose | C. <u>an</u> other | D. <u>th</u> ough |
| 23. A. <u>c</u> ity | B. <u>ca</u> pital | C. <u>tw</u> ice | D. <u>ex</u> cited |
| 24. A. <u>h</u> unter | B. <u>h</u> ometown | C. <u>h</u> ousework | D. <u>h</u> onor |

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 25. A. dangerous | B. generous | C. Portugal | D. large |
| 26. A. of | B. off-line | C. buffalo | D. fan |
| 27. A. October | B. century | C. pocket | D. classmate |
| 28. A. panda | B. decision | C. Wednesday | D. dining |
| 29. A. northern | B. smooth | C. without | D. through |
| 30. A. switch | B. stomach | C. launch | D. chance |
| 31. A. danger | B. anger | C. magical | D. general |
| 32. A. who | B. while | C. why | D. what |
| 33. A. scissors | B. ancestor | C. muscle | D. scenic |
| 34. A. island | B. poster | C. seem | D. suitcase |
| 35. A. although | B. threaten | C. authority | D. wealthy |
| 36. A. mechanic | B. Christmas | C. chorus | D. chauffeur |
| 37. A. poison | B. research | C. museum | D. resident |
| 38. A. cereal | B. century | C. coworker | D. cigarette |
| 39. A. exchange | B. children | C. teacher | D. schooling |
| 40. A. sunbathe | B. theatre | C. weather | D. brother |
| 41. A. cinema | B. construct | C. camera | D. medical |
| 42. A. doctor | B. dinner | C. panda | D. educate |
| 43. A. festival | B. cultural | C. virtual | D. sculpture |
| 44. A. popular | B. receipt | C. couple | D. pocket |
| 45. A. champion | B. character | C. approach | D. March |
| 46. A. system | B. historic | C. business | D. landscape |
| 47. A. citadel | B. complex | C. contribute | D. candle |
| 48. A. iron | B. laundry | C. respect | D. creamy |
| 49. A. sunshine | B. sugar | C. super | D. spread |
| 50. A. dweller | B. crowded | C. workshop | D. willing |

Exercise 3. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. question | B. information | C. attention | D. tuition |
| 2. A. heritage | B. however | C. rhinoceros | D. perhaps |
| 3. A. celebrate | B. tomb | C. breathe | D. observe |
| 4. A. scholarship | B. chemical | C. architect | D. chopstick |
| 5. A. typhoon | B. bamboo | C. bloodline | D. mooncake |
| 6. A. exhibit | B. exercise | C. example | D. exist |
| 7. A. memory | B. opinion | C. opening | D. police |

8. A. energy B. garage C. guide D. congratulate
9. A. craftsman B. safari C. departure D. station
10. A. slice B. pilot C. literature D. variety
11. A. exchange B. parachute C. brochure D. champagne
12. A. opportunity B. ruin C. sunglasses D. pollute
13. A. cyclist B. cyclone C. circus D. capable
14. A. solar B. local C. lockdown D. hole
15. A. determine B. nineteen C. shine D. online
16. A. nature B. national C. patient D. locate
17. A. nation B. palace C. natural D. background
18. A. religious B. region C. geography D. galaxy
19. A. launch B. challenge C. chef D. childhood
20. A. historical B. landscape C. business D. system
21. A. drum B. museum C. sculpture D. cultural
22. A. confident B. double C. education D. desert
23. A. prevent B. experiment C. athletics D. receptionist
24. A. scoreboard B. scissors C. science D. scenery
25. A. dinosaur B. resign C. crocodile D. idiom
26. A. suggestion B. position C. emotion D. option
27. A. biology B. geography C. occupy D. already
28. A. post B. host C. cost D. most
29. A. engine B. penthouse C. complete D. envelope
30. A. notebook B. homework C. cover D. potato
31. A. nephew B. drew C. flew D. sewage
32. A. divide B. discover C. discipline D. scuba-diving
33. A. teenage B. manage C. luggage D. damage
34. A. parade B. aquatic C. mammal D. champion
35. A. announce B. counter C. dangerous D. pronounce
36. A. primary B. comprise C. religion D. realize
37. A. experience B. impress C. memory D. mention
38. A. cultural B. sculpture C. drum D. museum
39. A. confident B. confirm C. community D. control
40. A. academic B. apply C. ambition D. anxious
41. A. eruption B. upcoming C. compulsory D. pollution
42. A. innovate B. homemade C. decorate D. sponsor
43. A. turtle B. burden C. purity D. curtain

44. A. medicine B. medium C. theme D. extreme
 45. A. village B. marriage C. teenage D. image
 46. A. scuba-diving B. preserve C. disagree D. suggestion
 47. A. expect B. perfect C. vegetable D. refresh
 48. A. earache B. architect C. chapter D. chemical
 49. A. autumn B. nomadic C. conserve D. central
 50. A. alphabet B. telephone C. salmon D. leisure

II. PHÁT ÂM ĐUÔI -S, -ES, -ED

1. Phát âm đuôi -s, -es

Đuôi 's' và 'es' thường được thêm vào sau danh từ số nhiều hoặc động từ chia với chủ ngữ số ít ở thì hiện tại đơn. Ngoài ra, đuôi 's' còn dùng trong sở hữu cách và dạng viết tắt của 'is' và 'has'.

Ví dụ

- + three apples (*ba quả táo*), one hundred elephants (*một trăm con voi*)
- + She goes to the cinema with her friend. (*Cô ấy đi đến rạp chiếu phim với bạn của mình.*)
- + Peter's house (*nhà của Peter*)
- + It's (= is) a lovely puppy. (*Nó là một chú cún đáng yêu.*)
- + She's (= has) been teaching English for 3 years. (*Cô ấy đã dạy tiếng Anh được 3 năm.*)

► Đuôi '-s, -es' có 3 cách phát âm:

- Phát âm là /s/ khi tận cùng của từ trước nó là: /p/, /k/, /f/, /θ/, /t/.
- Phát âm là /ɪz/ khi tận cùng của từ trước nó là: /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /ʒ/.
- Phát âm là /z/ khi tận cùng của từ trước nó là những nguyên âm và phụ âm còn lại.

Ví dụ

- + **forgets** là sự kết hợp giữa từ 'forget' và đuôi 's'
 Phiên âm của forget là /fə'get/ và được kết thúc bằng /t/ → đuôi 's' được phát âm là /s/.
- + **watches** là sự kết hợp giữa từ 'watch' và đuôi 'es'
 Phiên âm của watch là /wɒtʃ/ và được kết thúc bằng /tʃ/ → đuôi 'es' được phát âm là /ɪz/.
- + **arrives** là sự kết hợp giữa từ 'arrive' và đuôi 's'
 Phiên âm của arrive là /ə'raɪv/ và được kết thúc bằng /v/ → đuôi 's' được phát âm là /z/.

2. Phát âm đuôi -ed

Đuôi "ed" thường được thêm vào sau các động từ có quy tắc trong thì quá khứ đơn hoặc quá khứ phân từ (P2).

Ví dụ

- + Hoa and Lan played badminton together last week. (*Hoa và Lan đã chơi cầu lông cùng nhau vào tuần trước.*)
- + We have studied for the exam since June. (*Chúng tôi đã học cho kì thi đó từ tháng Sáu.*)

► Đuôi "ed" có 3 cách phát âm:

- Phát âm là /ɪd/ khi tận cùng của từ trước nó là /t/ và /d/.
- Phát âm là /t/ khi tận cùng của từ trước nó là /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /k/, /p/, /f/.
- Phát âm là /d/ khi tận cùng của từ trước nó là các nguyên âm và phụ âm còn lại.

Ví dụ

+ **wanted** là sự kết hợp giữa từ 'want' và đuôi 'ed'

Phiên âm của want là /wɒnt/ được kết thúc bằng /t/ → đuôi 'ed' được phát âm là /ɪd/.

+ **looked** là sự kết hợp giữa từ 'look' và đuôi 'ed'

Phiên âm của look là /lʊk/ được kết thúc bằng /k/ → đuôi 'ed' được phát âm là /t/.

+ **moved** là sự kết hợp giữa từ 'move' và đuôi 'ed'

Phiên âm của move là /mu:v/ được kết thúc bằng /v/ → đuôi 'ed' được phát âm là /d/.

Ngoại lệ: Một số từ có đuôi 'ed' được phát âm là /ɪd/ dù tận cùng của từ trước đó không phải là /t/, /d/ khi chúng được dùng như tính từ.

aged hatred naked sacred

wicked beloved crooked learned

ragged dogged wretched blessed

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 4. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. walks	B. cups	C. students	D. pens
2. A. hands	B. oranges	C. hammers	D. keys
3. A. types	B. roofs	C. leaves	D. knocks
4. A. stools	B. cups	C. draws	D. learns
5. A. bridges	B. teaches	C. receives	D. finishes
6. A. knives	B. clauses	C. houses	D. <u>changes</u>
7. A. questions	B. boxes	C. wears	D. bananas
8. A. agrees	B. copies	C. stops	D. hears
9. A. listens	B. protects	C. enjoys	D. installs
10. A. areas	B. bottles	C. qualities	D. envelops
11. A. channels	B. armchairs	C. laughs	D. clothes
12. A. houses	B. places	C. hates	D. brushes
13. A. responsibilities	B. values	C. waves	D. oranges
14. A. believes	B. destroys	C. pollutes	D. decides
15. A. programs	B. celebrities	C. services	D. studies
16. A. complaints	B. preserves	C. conserves	D. depends
17. A. hospitals	B. cinemas	C. questions	D. prevents

18. A. computers	B. blankets	C. cupboards	D. mirrors
19. A. allows	B. sleeps	C. months	D. backpacks
20. A. glasses	B. keyboards	C. cameras	D. cities
21. A. foreigners	B. materials	C. desktops	D. tissues
22. A. poisons	B. dishes	C. cameras	D. plans
23. A. sticks	B. plants	C. masks	D. boxes
24. A. kettles	B. telephones	C. doors	D. parents
25. A. responses	B. examples	C. flashes	D. practices
26. A. titles	B. photographs	C. camels	D. potatoes
27. A. concerns	B. effects	C. dryers	D. clothes
28. A. houses	B. <u>changes</u>	C. prizes	D. gloves
29. A. myths	B. ancestors	C. cliffs	D. worships
30. A. edges	B. washes	C. catches	D. wipes
31. A. biscuits	B. magazines	C. vegetables	D. bedrooms
32. A. subscribes	B. describes	C. markers	D. horses
33. A. bottles	B. campaigns	C. roses	D. pillows
34. A. photographs	B. attacks	C. regions	D. satellites
35. A. coaches	B. dishes	Co believes	D. grasses
36. A. parents	B. weekends	C. feelings	D. mothers
37. A. exists	B. climbs	C. warns	D. lives
38. A. carriages	B. whistles	C. programs	D. costumes
39. A. mosquitoes	B. crosswords	C. species	D. accidents
40. A. uniforms	B. classmates	C. desktops	D. lampposts
41. A. individuals	B. relieves	Co households	D. satellites
42. A. series	B. headquarters	C. snacks	D. historians
43. A. resources	B. stages	C. preserves	D. focuses
44. A. shoots	B. grounds	C. concentrates	D. forests
45. A. practices	B. tables	C. revises	D. possesses
46. A. neighbors	B. friends	C. photographs	D. relatives
47. A. involves	B. believes	C. suggests	D. steals
48. A. equals	B. attends	C. deserts	D. survives
49. A. coughs	B. ploughs	C. travels	D. happens
50. A. threatens	B. answers	C. promises	D. mirrors

Exercise 5. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. opened	B. wanted	C. showed	D. pulled
2. A. visited	B. studied	C. rained	D. loves
3. A. prayed	B. jumped	C. behaved	D. robbed
4. A. pleased	B. helped	C. faced	D. smoked
5. A. cleaned	B. attended	C. visited	D. started
6. A. painted	B. provided	C. landed	D. equipped
7. A. typed	B. pushed	C. cooked	D. urged
8. A. fished	B. cleared	C. allowed	D. stayed
9. A. coughed	B. cooked	C. melted	D. mixed
10. A. needed	B. booked	C. stopped	D. washed
11. A. screamed	B. pleased	C. delighted	D. discovered
12. A. admitted	B. contributed	C. introduced	D. decided
13. A. involved	B. believed	C. praised	D. locked
14. A. delivered	B. cherished	C. received	D. answered
15. A. removed	B. washed	C. hoped	D. missed
16. A. wicked	B. polished	C. stopped	D. laughed
17. A. caused	B. examined	C. operated	D. advised
18. A. discovered	B. requested	C. received	D. answered
19. A. screamed	B. covered	C. shouted	D. earned
20. A. traveled	B. coughed	C. finished	D. sentenced
21. A. compared	B. competed	C. commanded	D. beloved
22. A. described	B. argued	C. occurred	D. existed
23. A. founded	B. recommended	C. hatred	D. announced
24. A. regretted	B. applied	C. decided	D. posted
25. A. married	B. enjoyed	C. relaxed	D. explored
26. A. climbed	B. improved	C. preferred	D. remixed
27. A. balanced	B. edited	C. polished	D. camped
28. A. graphed	B. mended	C. attacked	D. switched
29. A. attended	B. interested	C. recorded	D. searched
30. A. failed	B. coughed	C. dumped	D. autographed
31. A. apologized	B. sacred	C. attracted	D. blinded
32. A. included	B. entertained	C. strengthened	D. deserved
33. A. apologized	B. sacred	C. attracted	D. blinded
34. A. practiced	B. escaped	C. followed	D. sacrificed
35. A. involved	B. threatened	C. realized	D. attended
36. A. proposed	B. approved	C. brushed	D. advertised

37. A. imagined	B. broadened	C. objected	D. organized
38. A. dedicated	B. contributed	C. complained	D. provided
39. A. annoyed	B. repaired	C. watched	D. remembered
40. A. pleased	B. erased	C. increased	D. amused
41. A. behaved	B. displayed	C. installed	D. approached
42. A. supposed	B. suggested	C. provided	D. devoted
43. A. endangered	B. implied	C. sentenced	D. struggled
44. A. apologized	B. caused	C. expressed	D. enabled
45. A. introduced	B. demanded	C. tested	D. decided
46. A. downloaded	B. accessed	C. matched	D. telegraphed
47. A. referred	B. reviewed	C. succeeded	D. studied
48. A. arrived	B. believed	C. received	D. hoped
49. A. imagined	B. released	C. rained	D. followed
50. A. delivered	B. organized	C. replaced	D. obeyed

Chuyên đề II TRỌNG ÂM

STRESS

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG ÂM

Trong tiếng Anh, một từ có thể được cấu tạo từ một hay nhiều âm tiết. Âm tiết chính là âm thanh phát ra khi nói và nó được cấu tạo bởi các nguyên âm đã học ở chuyên đề 1. Do đó, từ có bao nhiêu nguyên âm thì có bấy nhiêu âm tiết.

Ví dụ: Từ water được phát âm với 2 âm: /'wɔ:/ và /tə:/ → từ này có 2 âm tiết.

Trọng âm là âm tiết được nhấn mạnh hơn khi nói và được kí hiệu bằng dấu “ ' ” trước âm tiết chứa trọng âm.

Ví dụ: water /'wɔ:tə/ có dấu “ ' ” trước âm tiết /'wɔ:/ → trọng âm rơi vào âm thứ nhất. Trước khi vào những quy tắc chung về trọng âm, em cần nhớ một số **quy tắc chung** sau:

1. Âm chứa (ə) không bao giờ mang trọng âm.

Ví dụ: Từ farmer /'fɑ:rmə/ có 2 âm tiết và âm tiết thứ 2 “mə” chứa âm /ə/, vậy nên trọng âm không rơi vào âm thứ 2.

2. Trọng âm thường rơi vào những âm tiết chứa nguyên âm dài hoặc nguyên âm đôi

Ví dụ: Từ neighborhood /'neɪbərhʊd/ gồm 3 âm tiết, trong đó âm tiết 1 chứa nguyên âm đôi /eɪ/, trong khi 2 âm tiết còn lại chứa nguyên âm ngắn lần lượt là /ə/ và /ʊ/. Vậy nên trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 1.

3. Tiền tố và hậu tố phần lớn không mang trọng âm và không ảnh hưởng đến trọng âm của từ gốc.

Ví dụ: Từ unhappy có tiền tố un- và tiền tố này không thay đổi trọng âm của từ happy. Vậy happy /'hæpi/ - trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết 1 và unhappy /ʌn'hæpi/ - trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết 2.

I. TRỌNG ÂM VỚI TỪ CÓ 2 ÂM TIẾT

Quy tắc 1: Hầu hết danh từ và tính từ có 2 âm tiết thì trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

Ví dụ

- + Danh từ: father /'fɑ:ðə/, bottle /'bɒtl/, desktop /'deskɒp/,...
- + Tính từ: ugly /'ʌgli/, happy /'hæpi/, quiet /'kwaɪət/,...

Quy tắc 2: Hầu hết động từ có 2 âm tiết thì trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai.

Ví dụ

- + Động từ: enjoy /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/, forget /fə'get/, invite /ɪn'vaɪt/,...

★ Ngoại lệ:

Một số danh từ và tính từ nhưng trọng âm rơi vào âm thứ hai:

mistake /mɪ'steɪk/ advice /əd'vaɪs/ machine /mə'ʃi:n/ police /pə'li:s/
polite /pə'laɪt/ alone /ə'ləʊn/ amazed /ə'meɪzd/ mature /mə'tʃʊə/

Một số động từ nhưng trọng âm rơi vào âm thứ nhất:

answer /'ɑ:nsər/ enter /'entər/ happen /'hæpən/ offer /'ɒfər/
 travel /'trævl/ listen /'lɪsn/ visit /'vɪzɪt/ finish /'fɪnɪʃ/
 open /'əʊpən/ manage /'mænɪdʒ/

II. TRỌNG ÂM VỚI TỪ CÓ 3 ÂM TIẾT TRỞ LÊN

Quy tắc 3: Những từ có đuôi là *-sion, -tion, -cian, -ic, -able, -itive* thì trọng âm rơi vào âm ngay trước nó.

Ví dụ

Từ **decision** /dɪ'sɪʒn/ có 3 âm tiết và kết thúc bằng đuôi *-sion*, vậy nên trọng âm sẽ rơi vào âm trước nó là âm tiết thứ 2 /sɪ/.

decision /dɪ'sɪʒn/ magician /mə'dʒɪʃn/ responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/
 position /pə'zɪʃn/ economic /,i:kə'nɒmɪk/ sensitive /'sensətɪv/

Quy tắc 4: Những từ có đuôi là *-y (-cy, -ty, -phy, -gy), -ical, -ate* thì trọng âm rơi vào âm thứ 3 từ cuối lên.

Ví dụ

Từ **activity** /æk'tɪvəti/ có 4 âm tiết và kết thúc bằng đuôi *-ty*, vậy nên trọng âm sẽ rơi vào âm thứ 3 tính từ cuối lên và là âm *tɪ*.

privacy /'prɪvəsi/ geography /dʒɪ'ɒɡrəfi/ chemical /'kemɪkl/
 activity /æk'tɪvəti/ biology /baɪ'ɒlədʒi/ graduate /'ɡrædʒuət/

★ **Lưu ý:** quy tắc với đuôi *-y* không bao gồm trường hợp đuôi *-ly* của trạng từ. Ta coi *-ly* ở đây là một hậu tố.

Ví dụ

wonderfully /'wʌndəflɪ/ có đuôi *-ly* của trạng từ nên trọng âm vẫn giữ nguyên so với tính từ wonderful.

Quy tắc 5: Các hậu tố *-ment, -ship, -ness, -ful, -less, -able, -ous, -al, -or, -er, -dom* không mang trọng âm và không thay đổi trọng âm của từ gốc.

Ví dụ

Từ **entertainment** /,entə'teɪnmənt/ có 4 âm tiết và kết thúc bằng đuôi *-ment*. Khi bỏ đuôi *-ment* chúng ta được từ gốc là **entertain** /entə'teɪn/ có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3, do vậy khi thêm đuôi *-ment*, trọng âm vẫn rơi vào âm thứ 3.

entertainment	happiness	powerless	dangerous
/,entə'teɪnmənt/	/'hæpɪnəs/	/'paʊələs/	/'deɪndʒərəs/
relationship	wonderful	reliable	personal
/rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/	/'wʌndəfl/	/rɪ'laɪəbl/	/'pɜ:rsənl/

★ **Lưu ý:** đuôi *-ing* và *-ed* của tính từ được coi là hậu tố, chúng không mang trọng âm và không thay đổi trọng âm của từ gốc.

Ví dụ: **interest** có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất interesting và interested cùng có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

Quy tắc 6: Các tiền tố *un-, im-, in-, ir-, re-, de-, dis-* không mang trọng âm và không thay đổi trọng âm của từ gốc.

Ví dụ:

Từ **incorrect** /ˌɪnkə'rekt/ có 3 âm tiết và bắt đầu bằng in-. Khi bỏ tiền tố -in chúng ta được từ gốc là từ correct /kə'rekt/ có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2, do vậy khi thêm tiền tố in-, trọng âm của từ incorrect rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3.

unhappy	incorrect	reproduce	disadvantage
/ʌn'hæpi/	/ˌɪnkə'rekt/	/ˌri:prə'dju:s/	/ˌdɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/
impossible	irresponsible	deforest	
/ɪm'pɒsəbl/	/ˌɪrɪ'spɒnsəbl/	/ˌdi:'fɒrɪst/	

Quy tắc 7: Các đuôi *-ee, -eer, -ese, -air, -ique, -esque, -ain* có trọng âm rơi vào chính nó.

Ví dụ:

Từ volunteer /ˌvɒlən'tɪər/ có 3 âm tiết và có đuôi -eer, do vậy trọng âm rơi vào chính nó và trọng âm của từ rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3.

refugee /ˌrefju'dʒi:/

Vietnamese /ˌvi:etnə'mi:z/

technique /tek'ni:k/

volunteer /ˌvɒlən'tɪər/

billionaire /ˌbɪljə'neər/

picturesque /ˌpɪktʃə'resk/

III. TỪ GHÉP

Quy tắc 8: Danh từ và tính từ ghép (viết liền) có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất

Ví dụ:

Danh từ: armchair (/ˈɑ:mtʃeər/), greenhouse (/ˈɡri:nhaʊs/), cupboard (/ˈkʌbəd/)

Tính từ: carsick (/ˈkɑ:rsɪk/), flameproof (/ˈfleɪmpru:f/)

Quy tắc 9: Tính từ ghép cấu tạo bởi adv/adj + P2 thì trọng âm rơi vào trọng âm của P2

Ví dụ:

well-known (/ˌwel 'nəʊn/), doe-eyed (/ˌdəʊ 'aɪd/), kind-hearted (/ˌkaɪnd 'hɑ:tɪd/)

Quy tắc 10: Động từ ghép có trọng âm rơi vào trọng âm của động từ chính

Ví dụ:

undo (/ʌn'du:/), overreact (/ˌəʊvəri'ækt/)

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.

1. A. country	B. busy	C. lazy	D. discuss
2. A. open	B. police	C. delay	D. decide
3. A. problem	B. answer	C. hotel	Do children
4. A. avoid	B. ocean	C. happen	D. finish

5. A. city	B. bottle	C. collect	D. notebook
6. A. student	B. receive	C. explore	Do destroy
7. A. fashion	B. famous	C. purpose	D. prepare
8. A. equal	B. exist	C. expect	D. replace
9. A. pronounce	B. divide	C. reduce	D. widen
10. A. alone	B. advise	C. affect	D. armpit
11. A. option	B. arrange	C. provide	D. accept
12. A. arrive	B. perform	C. enter	D. release
13. A. purchase	B. reduce	C. advise	D. attend
14. A. carbon	B. contain	C. police	D. regret
15. A. career	B. teacher	C. author	D. singer
16. A. arrive	B. study	C. damage	D. actress
17. A. regret	B. selfish	C. purpose	D. castle
18. A. disease	B. humor	C. cancer	D. cattle
19. A. hundred	B. thousand	C. relic	D. rewrite
20. A. finish	B. cover	C. perform	D. quarter
21. A. relax	B. wonder	C. landfill	D. special
22. A. baby	B. novel	C. picture	D. remind
23. A. ancient	B. knowledge	C. language	D. mistake
24. A. freedom	B. typhoon	C. consist	D. prevent
25. A. occur	B. devote	C. landscape	D. compose
26. A. supply	Bo nature	C. angry	D. peaceful
27. A. active	B. logic	C. amount	D. service
28. A. complete	B. usual	C. excite	D. technique
29. A. advance	B. design	C. thoughtful	D. attract
30. A. reduce	B. hardship	C. winter	D. coastal
31. A. support	B. question	C. hi-tech	D. mature
32. A. event	B. mobile	C. former	D. culture
33. A. sculpture	B. preserve	C. feature	D. purple
34. A. begin	B. mountain	C. kingdom	D. passage
35. A. earthquake	B. provide	C. conserve	D. pretend
36. A. afford	B. expect	C. guidance	D. relaxed
37. A. worry	B. igloo	C. behave	D. complex
38. A. honor	B. nuclear	C. extend	D. tunnel
39. A. involve	B. rubbish	C. darkness	D. entrance
40. A. mushroom	B. allow	C. rubber	D. sandals

41. A. tourist	B. solar	C. except	D. quiet
42. A. attend	B. agree	C. visit	D. exchange
43. A. cycling	B. checkout	C. package	D. explore
44. A. layer	B. skilful	C. conflict	D. depressed
45. A. remote	B. thirsty	C. fortress	D. workshop
46. A. consist	B. inspire	C. logic	D. unique
47. A. casual	B. equal	C. account	D. sailor
48. A. champagne	B. fashion	C. poet	D. modest
49. A. order	B. limit	C. remote	D. wander
50. A. comment	B. label	C. website	D. expand

Exercise 2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.

1. A. popular	B. remember	C. factory	D. cultural
2. A. tradition	B. attractive	C. connection	D. information
3. A. quality	B. romantic	C. telephone	D. different
4. A. national	B. successful	C. formation	D. tomorrow
5. A. customer	B. evening	C. century	D. imagine
6. A. employment	B. athletics	C. pollution	D. organize
7. A. population	B. communicate	C. announcement	D. excitement
8. A. description	B. practical	C. convenient	D. musician
9. A. biology	B. photography	C. energy	D. apology
10. A. scientist	B. ambitious	C. chocolate	D. accident
11. A. encourage	B. important	C. expression	D. positive
12. A. outstanding	B. capital	C. citadel	D. dangerous
13. A. charity	B. creative	C. confident	D. curious
14. A. animal	B. variety	C. technology	D. fantastic
15. A. opportunity	B. terrible	C. character	D. balcony
16. A. government	B. computer	C. expensive	D. composer
17. A. entertain	B. facility	C. souvenir	D. overuse
18. A. appearance	B. original	C. industry	D. production
19. A. comfortable	B. beautiful	C. Portuguese	D. multiply
20. A. vegetable	B. usually	C. managing	D. comedian
21. A. typical	B. museum	C. interest	D. cinema
22. A. academic	B. nationality	C. literature	D. preparation
23. A. develop	B. experience	C. material	D. understand
24. A. recovery	B. adventurous	C. interview	D. connection

25. A. newspaper	B. interesting	C. endanger	D. calculate
26. A. carefully	B. personally	C. correctly	D. differently
27. A. loyalty	B. memorable	C. incapable	D. Internet
28. A. occasion	B. government	C. sensitive	D. national
29. A. refugee	B. trainee	C. volunteer	D. pioneer
30. A. proposal	B. chaotic	C. organize	D. intention
31. A. expensive	B. popular	C. exciting	D. important
32. A. dictation	B. reservation	C. tradition	D. occasion
33. A. documentary	B. biology	C. particular	D. environment
34. A. advertise	B. institute	C. candidate	D. deposit
35. A. economic	B. identity	C. independent	D. pioneer
36. A. privacy	B. generation	C. operate	D. compliment
37. A. literature	B. important	C. minority	D. distinguish
38. A. scientific	B. destruction	C. discovery	D. development
39. A. necessary	B. informative	C. vegetable	D. company
40. A. adventure	B. generous	C. library	D. wonderful
41. A. customer	B. mineral	C. priority	D. precious
42. A. electronic	B. behavior	C. education	D. entertain
43. A. experience	B. volcano	C. temperature	D. available
44. A. thunderstorm	B. musical	C. position	D. natural
45. A. terrific	B. historical	C. comfortable	D. remember
46. A. attraction	B. humorous	C. resources	D. efficiency
47. A. encourage	B. decorate	C. commercial	D. community
48. A. unpolluted	B. irresponsible	C. beautifully	D. concentration
49. A. museum	B. astronomy	C. exercise	D. example
50. A. powerful	B. athletic	C. position	D. geography

Exercise 3. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.

1. A. fabulous	B. determine	C. skyscraper	D. numerous
2. A. independent	B. emergency	C. multinational	D. geological
3. A. astronaut	B. universe	C. affordable	D. confidence
4. A. leisure	B. weather	C. coffee	D. alone
5. A. concentrate	B. community	C. satisfied	D. ancestor
6. A. electric	B. diversity	C. recognize	D. minority
7. A. gather	B. custom	C. basic	D. accept
8. A. generation	B. commemorate	C. aquatic	D. pollutant

9. A. measure	B. untreated	C. visual	D. cattle
10. A. parade	B. earthquake	C. surface	D. message
11. A. handicraft	B. originate	C. performance	D. delicious
12. A. pancake	B. helmet	C. compass	D. consist
13. A. scholar	B. heritage	C. academy	D. vehicle
14. A. adolescence	B. simplicity	C. inaccessible	D. flexibility
15. A. uncontrollably	B. Jupiter	C. dangerous	D. uniform
16. A. retirement	B. impression	C. television	D. financial
17. A. historic	B. organize	C. personal	D. brotherhood
18. A. shampoo	B. coffee	C. payee	D. include
19. A. guarantee	B. investigate	C. illegal	D. invader
20. A. automatic	B. environment	C. continuous	D. familiar
21. A. apply	B. visit	C. appear	D. attend
22. A. university	B. comfortable	C. compliment	D. necessary
23. A. perfection	B. computer	C. fascinate	D. fantastic
24. A. genuine	B. kangaroo	C. generous	D. fortunate
25. A. addition	B. scientist	C. promotion	D. embarrass
26. A. introduce	B. majority	C. intelligent	D. opponent
27. A. unbelievable	B. entertainment	C. advertisement	D. experience
28. A. opposite	B. difficult	C. gymnastic	D. educate
29. A. ambulance	B. minority	C. tragedy	D. industry
30. A. dinosaur	B. elephant	C. kangaroo	D. buffalo
31. A. edition	B. tradition	C. different	D. expensive
32. A. participant	B. advisable	C. permission	D. atmosphere
33. A. destination	B. consider	C. abnormal	D. impatient
34. A. appropriate	B. several	C. economy	D. eliminate
35. A. agreement	B. continent	C. calculate	D. suitable
36. A. decision	B. refusal	C. reference	D. advancement
37. A. abroad	B. consist	Co label	D. attend
38. A. mountaineer	B. photography	C. majority	D. reliable
39. A. activity	B. biologist	C. distribution	D. considerate
40. A. outbreaks	B. outdoors	C. outskirts	D. outcomes
41. A. wonderful	B. permanent	C. aquatic	D. chocolate
42. A. government	B. national	Co energy	D. financial
43. A. garbage	B. arrange	C. global	D. climate
44. A. disaster	B. tornado	C. countryside	D. invention

45. A. interesting	B. impressive	C. possible	D. liveable
46. A. regular	B. examine	C. cultural	D. populous
47. A. engineer	B. competition	Co restaurant	D. concentration
48. A. optimistic	B. unexpected	C. successful	D. electricity
49. A. capital	B. tradition	C. different	D. opera
50. A. university	B. sociology	C. examination	D. entertainment

Topic 1

ENVIRONMENT & OUR GREEN PLANET

1. TỔNG HỢP TỪ VỰNG CẦN NHỚ

STT	Từ	Từ loại	Nghĩa
1	affect	v	ảnh hưởng
	effect	n	sự ảnh hưởng
	effective	adj	có ảnh hưởng/có hiệu quả
2	alternative	adj	thay thế
3	aquatic	adj	dưới nước
4	billboard	n	biển quảng cáo
5	biodiversity	n	đa dạng sinh học
6	biogas	n	khí đốt (từ chất thải)
7	canyon	n	hẻm núi
8	carbon footprint	np	vết carbon
9	coastal	adj	ven biển
10	conserve	v	bảo tồn
11	contaminate	v	làm ô nhiễm
12	continent	n	lục địa
13	coral reef	phr	rặng san hô
14	charity	n	quỹ từ thiện
15	danger dangerous endangered	n	sự nguy hiểm
		adj	nguy hiểm
		adj	gặp nguy hiểm
16	forest	n	rừng
	deforestation	n	nạn phá rừng
17	desert	n	sa mạc
18	destroy destructive destruction	v	phá hủy
		adj	(tính) phá hủy
		n	sự phá hủy, phá hoại
19	disappear	v	biến mất
20	dump	v	vứt bỏ
	= dispose of	v	
21	ecosystem	n	hệ sinh thái
	ecology	n	sinh thái
22	emission	n	khí thải
23	energy	n	năng lượng

24	essential	adj	<i>cần thiết, thiết yếu</i>
25	extinct	adj	<i>tuyệt chủng</i>
	extinction	n	<i>sự tuyệt chủng</i>
26	fertilizer	n	<i>phân bón</i>
27	flora and fauna	np	<i>hệ động thực vật</i>
28	food chain	np	<i>chuỗi thức ăn</i>
29	fossil fuel	np	<i>nhiên liệu hóa thạch</i>
30	generate	v	<i>tạo ra, phát ra</i>
31	giant	adj	<i>khổng lồ</i>
32	habitat	n	<i>môi trường sống</i>
33	harm	v	<i>làm hại</i>
	harmful	adj	<i>có hại</i>
	>< harmless	adj	<i>vô hại</i>
	(un)harmed	adj	<i>(không) bị tổn hại</i>
34	hunt	v	<i>săn</i>
35	landfill	n	<i>bãi rác</i>
36	landform	n	<i>địa hình</i>
37	liquid	n	<i>chất lỏng</i>
38	low-cost	adj	<i>giá thấp</i>
39	lung	n	<i>phổi</i>
40	natural resources	np	<i>tài nguyên thiên nhiên</i>
41	nature reserve	np	<i>khu bảo tồn thiên nhiên</i>
42	peak	n	<i>đỉnh</i>
43	permanent	adj	<i>vĩnh viễn</i>
44	persuade	v	<i>thuyết phục</i>
45	petrol	n	<i>xăng</i>
	= gas/gasoline	n	
46	pole	n	<i>cực (Trái Đất)</i>
47	pollute	v	<i>làm ô nhiễm</i>
	pollution	n	<i>sự ô nhiễm</i>
	pollutant	n	<i>tác nhân ô nhiễm</i>
	(un)polluted	adj	<i>(không) bị ô nhiễm</i>
48	preserve	v	<i>bảo tồn</i>
49	prevent	v	<i>ngăn chặn</i>
50	prey	n	<i>con mồi</i>
51	produce	v	<i>sản xuất, sản sinh</i>

52	radioactive	adj	(thuộc) phóng xạ
53	recycle	v	tái chế
54	reduce	v	gaimr thiêu
55	refillable	adj	có thể làm đầy lại
56	release	v	thải ra
57	renewable	adj	có thể tái tạo
58	rubber	n	cao su
59	rubbish = garbage = trash	n n n	rác
60	satellite	n	vệ tinh
61	sea level	np	mức nước biển
62	significant significance	adj n	quan trọng tầm quan trọng
63	solar solar panel	adj np	(thuộc) mặt trời tấm pin năng lượng mặt trời
64	thermal	adj	(thuộc) nhiệt
65	threat threaten	n v	sự đe dọa đe dọa
66	throw away	vp	vứt đi
67	treat (un)treated treatment	v adj n	xử lí (chưa) được xử lí sự xử lí
68	tropical	adj	nhiệt đới
69	volunteer volunteer	n v	tình nguyện viên làm tình nguyện

2. TỔNG HỢP CẤU TRÚC CẦN NHỚ

STT	Cụm	Nghĩa
1	avoid + V-ing	tránh làm gì
2	be responsible for sth/V-ing = take responsibility for sth/V-ing	có trách nhiệm về việc gì
3	concern about sth	quan ngại về gì
4	contribute to sth/V-ing	đóng góp vào việc gì
5	encourage sb to V	khuyến khích ai làm gì
6	look forward to sth/V-ing	mong đợi cái gì/làm gì

7	prevent sb from V-ing	<i>ngăn chặn ai làm gì</i>
8	provide sb with sth	<i>cung cấp cho ai cái gì</i>
9	raise sb's awareness of sth	<i>nâng cao nhận thức của ai về gì</i>
10	rely on sth	<i>dựa vào cái gì</i>

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Odd one out

1. A. aquatic	B. desert	C. coastal	D. giant
2. A. ecosystem	B. environment	C. charity	D. habitat
3. A. rubber	B. fossil fuel	C. solar energy	D. biogas
4. A. threaten	B. harmful	C. destroy	D. preserve
5. A. coral reef	B. forest	C. canyon	D. satellite
6. A. threatened	B. endangered	C. dangerous	D. harmed
7. A. polluted	B. unharmed	C. contaminated	D. untreated
8. A. landfill	B. preserve	C. protect	D. conserve
9. A. reuse	B. release	C. reduce	D. recycle
10. A. deforestation	B. recycling	C. heatwave	D. carbon footprint

Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks with the suitable given words.

<i>pollution</i>	<i>untreated</i>	<i>charities</i>	<i>endangered</i>
<i>saved</i>	<i>effect</i>	<i>conservation</i>	

- Those butterflies are now a(n) _____ species due to declining numbers.
- She jumped into the swimming pool and _____ the child from drowning.
- The _____ water from the factory is dumped into the river every year.
- 10% of the month's profit will be given to local _____.
- My parents' divorce had a big _____ on me.
- The committee soon offered a plan for development and _____ in all areas of the city.
- _____ and overfishing have reduced the population of coastal fish.

Exercise 3. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

- Recycling helps to reduce the amount of _____ that ends up in landfills.
A. energy B. rubbish C. forest D. food
- The _____ is home to many different plants and animals.
A. balance B. ecosystem C. ecology D. habitat
- Trees help to keep the air _____ by absorbing carbon dioxide.
A. pure B. polluted C. clear D. clean
- We should always _____ our trash properly to keep the environment clean.

- A. save B. throw C. waste D. reuse
5. Recycling is to _____ waste and save natural resources.
A. reduce B. increase C. dispose D. collect
6. Plastic bags are harmful to the environment because they can _____ animals.
A. benefit B. protect C. harm D. aid
7. Solar panels use sunlight to generate _____.
A. heat B. pollution C. energy D. landfill
8. Emission from cars and factories can cause air _____ and it is hard to breathe.
A. polluted B. pollution C. pollute D. pollutant
9. The process of cutting trees for temporary purposes is called _____.
A. deforestation B. logging C. urbanization D. reforestation
10. Renewable energy sources produce fewer greenhouse gas _____ compared to fossil fuels.
A. emission B. smoke C. carbon D. effect
11. Nuclear waste remains _____ for thousands of years and requires secure disposal methods.
A. wonderful B. harmless C. radioactive D. refillable
12. Solar panels absorb _____ energy from the sun to generate electricity.
A. wind B. thermal C. fuel D. hot
13. Plastic bags affect the _____ due to their harmful impact on marine life and ecosystems.
A. ocean B. household C. atmosphere D. universe
14. Many eco-friendly cleaning products are _____ to aquatic life.
A. harmful B. dangerous C. harmless D. endangered
15. _____ loss is a serious concern because it can destroy ecosystem.
A. Biodiversity B. Deforestation C. Pollution D. Recycling
16. Scientists believe there are more than 350,000 _____ of plants, but no one knows for sure.
A. species B. lots C. categories D. varieties
17. The hunting of _____ animals pose a significant threat to their survival in the wild.
A. endangered B. harmful C. dangerous D. extinct
18. The winds were so powerful that they _____ the entire town.
A. polluted B. preserved C. cleaned D. destroyed
19. Planting trees and reducing carbon emissions can help _____ climate change.
A. recycle B. increase C. prevent D. produce
20. Deforestation has a deep _____ on the biodiversity of ecosystems.
A. affect B. effectively C. effect D. effective
21. Solar and wind energy are examples of _____ sources of power.
A. limited B. fossil C. renewable D. polluted
22. If we continue to contaminate the sea, some marine species may _____ from our oceans.

A. disappear B. hunt C. danger D. threaten

23. Some local factories are _____ for dumping waste into the river.

A. careless B. responsible C. significant D. encouraged

24. Conservationists look forward _____ more green spaces in urban areas.

A. to see B. seeing C. to seeing D. see

25. The government has made an effort to prevent some aquatic species from going _____, like dinosaurs.

A. dangerous B. extinct C. polluted D. harmful

26. _____ have provided invaluable data for tracking changes in sea level based on movement of the moon.

A. Satellites B. Binoculars C. Charities D. Solar panels

27. To combat air pollution permanently, we need _____ solutions.

A. short-term B. limited C. long-term D. challenging

28. Carbon dioxide and methane are examples of greenhouse _____ contributing to global warming.

A. pollution B. polluted C. pollute D. pollutants

29. Many countries _____ agriculture as their main source of food and income.

A. contribute to B. depend in C. throw away D. rely on

30. National parks are established to _____ natural habitats and wildlife.

A. converse B. recycle C. prevent D. preserve

Exercise 4. Fill in each blank with a suitable word.

Paragraph 1

<i>preserve</i>	<i>hunting</i>	<i>unpolluted</i>	<i>threatening</i>
<i>extinction</i>	<i>charities</i>	<i>damage</i>	

In recent years, there's been a lot of concern about how much (1) _____ we're causing to the environment. One big problem is (2) _____ animals too much, which has made many species (3) _____ forever. This is not only bad for the animals but also (4) _____ the places where they live. But there's some good news too. Some scientists are working hard to (5) _____ nature. They're like (6) _____, but instead of helping people, they're focused on saving animals and plants. These groups are trying to stop the consequences humans are causing and keep our planet (7) _____.

Paragraph 2

<i>polluted</i>	<i>fossil fuels</i>	<i>contribute</i>
<i>volunteer</i>	<i>endangered</i>	<i>environmental</i>

To protect the environment, it's important to be mindful of our actions.

- Simple habits like recycling and reducing waste can make a big difference.
- Spreading awareness about (1) _____ issues, such as (2) _____ species and (3) _____ habitats, helps to inspire others to take action too.

- Getting involved as a (4) _____ in community clean-up events or conservation programs is a great way to make a positive impact.
 - Choosing cleaner energy sources over (5) _____ helps to lessen our environmental footprint.
- By working together and making small changes in our daily lives, we can all (6) _____ to preserve the environment for the future.

Exercise 5. Rewrite the following sentences by using the word in the brackets.

1. "Please eat less sugar" My mom told me. (PREVENTED)

→

2. Anna shouldn't shut the door so hard. (AVOID)

→

3. The school aims to educate students about the importance of biodiversity. (AWARENESS)

→

4. People around the world eagerly expect to celebrate Earth Day. (FORWARD)

→

5. Hunting has made many animals disappear forever. (APPEARING)

→

6. Local people are responsible for waste treatment. (TAKE)

→

7. The government gave funding to charity to support renewable energy projects. (PROVIDED)

→

8. Schools think it is good for students to take part in some events as a volunteer. (ENCOURAGE)

→

Exercise 6. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

1. Robots can help people solve soil _____ by collecting the harmful substances quickly. (POLLUTE)
2. It's difficult for the government to prevent poachers from poaching _____ animals. (DANGER)
3. Tiger habitat is _____ by the result of global warming. (AFFECT)
4. _____ waste was dumped straight to the nearby river, which killed many fish. (TREAT)
5. Although people cut down most of the pine forest in the North, luckily, this area is still _____. (HARM)
6. The rate of _____ is threatening the habitat of countless species and worsens climate change. (FOREST)
7. We need to protect our _____ resources like forests, water, and minerals for a better future. (NATURE)
8. Climate change _____ ecosystems globally, endangering countless species. (THREAT)
9. The _____ of forests for logging is a big concern. (DESTROY)
10. After years of dumping, the _____ became a polluted area. (LAND)

Exercise 7. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct arrangement of the sentences to make a meaningful paragraph/letter for the following questions.

1.

- a. Next, students should tidy their own room and throw rubbish in the right place.
- b. Students can also turn off and unplug the electronic devices before leaving the room in order to save energy.
- c. Firstly, people can use public transportation to reduce the carbon footprint and gas emissions.
- d. Lastly, planting more trees is a brilliant idea because they help clean the air and bring US a fresher atmosphere.
- e. Everyone can contribute to a greener planet through small daily actions.
- f. In short, we can protect our planet in many different ways.

A. c-e-a-b-d-f B. c-a-e-b-d-f C. e-c-b-a-d-f D. e-c-a-b-d-f

2.

- a. When their habitat is destroyed, the species cannot find any more food or a place to live, sleep or have babies.
- b. Finally, they dies out.
- c. Therefore, they take away the natural home of plants and animals and start to build houses and

factories.

d. More and more people live in our world, so they need more space to live in.

e. Long ago, most animals and plants became extinct because of natural events, like earthquakes or volcano eruptions.

f. However, today, plants and animals are in danger mostly because of human beings.

A. a-e-f-d-b-c B. a-d-e-f-c-b C. e-f-d-c-a-b D. e-f-a-b-d-c

3.

a. Therefore, we suggest that you should take actions as soon as possible.

b. Third, we should make use of plastic waste in arts and crafts projects, for example, for making plant pots or bird feeders.

c. Second, the Youth Union should raise students' awareness about recycling properly.

d. This report suggests three main solutions to the problem of single-use products in our school.

e. First, we suggest that the school should provide more recycling bins.

f. Reusing and recycling single-use plastics will lead to a greener school environment and help promote a green lifestyle among young people.

A. d-e-c-f-b-a B. d-e-c-b-a-f C. d-e-b-c-f-a D. d-e-c-b-f-a

4.

a. Additionally, simple habits, like turning off lights when not needed and unplugging devices, also help.

b. Best regards, Mike.

c. Lastly, when the air conditioner is turned on, we can maintain home temperature by closing windows and doors.

d. Scientists show that traditional light bulbs cost twice as much energy as LED bulbs.

e. Dear Hana, I hope you're well. I found out some tips to save energy and lower bills.

f. To begin with, try using energy-efficient appliances, and switching to LED bulbs.

A. e-f-d-a-c-b B. e-f-a-d-c-b C. e-f-c-a-d-b D. e-d-a-f-c-b

5.

a. First, the temperatures are rising, which causes the ice in polar regions to melt.

b. That's why individuals and governments should join hands to ensure a greener, healthier planet.

c. However, many forests are being cut down at an alarming rate.

d. Global warming is affecting the entire world.

e. As a result, sea levels are increasing, and low-lying areas are in danger.

f. Moreover, the forest plays a crucial role in absorbing carbon dioxide.

A. d-f-c-a-b-e B. d-a-e-f-c-b C. d-a-f-c-e-b D. f-c-b-e-a-d

Chuyên đề III MỆNH ĐỀ VÀ CÂU

CLAUSES AND SENTENCES

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. MỆNH ĐỀ

Giống như cụm chủ ngữ - vị ngữ trong tiếng Việt, mệnh đề trong tiếng Anh là thành phần nòng cốt cấu tạo nên câu.

Cấu trúc đơn giản nhất của một mệnh đề là:

S + V

Trong đó:

► **S - Chủ ngữ (Subject):** chủ thể (người, vật, sự việc) thực hiện hành động.

► **V - Động từ (Verb):** hành động chính xảy ra.

Ví dụ:

She smiles. (Cô ấy mỉm cười.)

S V

Jennie is crying. (Jennie đang khóc.)

S V

Tuy nhiên, ngoài chủ ngữ và động từ, còn một số thành phần câu quan trọng đi kèm khác các em cần lưu ý.

► **O - Tân ngữ (Object):** đối tượng chịu tác động bởi chủ ngữ, thường đứng sau động từ.

Ví dụ:

I plant a small tree. (Tôi trồng một cái cây nhỏ.)

S V O

“Cái cây nhỏ” là tân ngữ vì bị ảnh hưởng bởi hành động “trồng” của chủ ngữ “tôi”.

► **A - Trạng ngữ (Adverbial):** từ, cụm từ bổ sung thông tin cho mệnh đề chính về mặt thời gian, nơi chốn, tần suất,...

Trạng ngữ có thể đứng ở đầu câu hoặc cuối câu. Một câu có thể có một hay nhiều trạng ngữ.

Ví dụ

Yesterday, we ate noodles. (Ngày hôm qua, chúng tôi đã ăn mì.)

A S V O

“Yesterday” là trạng ngữ vì nó bổ sung ý nghĩa về mặt thời gian cho mệnh đề.

Tom and Linda live in a big city. (Tom và Linda sống ở một thành phố lớn.)

S V A

“in a big city” là trạng ngữ vì nó bổ sung ý nghĩa về mặt nơi chốn cho mệnh đề.

► **C - Bổ ngữ (Complement):** bổ sung ý nghĩa cho chủ ngữ và thường đứng sau các động từ nối (be, become, seem, feel, look, taste, sound,...)

Ví dụ:

Peter is very disappointed. (Peter rất thất vọng.)

S V C

“very disappointed” là bổ ngữ vì bổ sung thông tin về cảm xúc của chủ ngữ “Peter”.

Cutting down this tree seems difficult. (Đốn hạ cái cây này có vẻ khó.)

S V C

“difficult” là bổ ngữ vì bổ sung thông tin cảm giác cho chủ ngữ.

II. CÁC LOẠI CÂU TRONG TIẾNG ANH

1. Câu đơn (Simple Sentence)

Câu đơn là câu bao gồm một mệnh đề độc lập và đầy đủ về mặt ý nghĩa.

Ví dụ:

My mom is a good cook. (Mẹ tôi là một đầu bếp giỏi.)

S V C

Laura worked in a restaurant. (Laura đã từng làm việc tại một nhà hàng.)

S V A

Everyone will finish the test on Wednesday.

S V O A

(Tất cả mọi người sẽ hoàn thành bài kiểm tra vào thứ Tư.)

2. Câu ghép (Compound Sentence)

Câu ghép là câu có hai mệnh đề độc lập và đầy đủ về mặt ý nghĩa trở lên được kết nối với nhau bởi liên từ kết hợp như **and, or, but, so,...**

Ví dụ

Anna walks to school and her father drives to work.

S1 V1 A1 liên từ S2 V2 A2

(Anna đi bộ đến trường và bố cô ấy lái xe đi làm.)

She did a nursing degree, and she did well, but she decided to study medicine.

(Cô ấy đã học một bằng điều dưỡng và cô ấy làm rất tốt, nhưng cô ấy đã lại quyết định học y.)

Câu trên là câu ghép chứa ba mệnh đề. Em hãy phân tích cấu trúc của nó.

3. Câu phức (Complex Sentence)

Khác với mệnh đề độc lập, mệnh đề phụ thuộc là mệnh đề không thể đứng một mình vì nó chưa đầy đủ về mặt ý nghĩa.

Ví dụ

Because it rains heavily,... (Vì trời mưa to,...)

Đây là một mệnh đề phụ thuộc vì khi đọc về này ta chưa hiểu trời vì trời mưa to thì làm sao, nên câu này ta vẫn cần một mệnh đề nữa để thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

→ Because it rains heavily, Alan cannot get home on time. (Vì trời mưa to, Alan không thể về nhà đúng giờ.)

Câu phức là câu có hai mệnh đề trở lên trong đó có một mệnh đề độc lập và đầy đủ về mặt ý nghĩa và

một hay nhiều mệnh đề phụ thuộc và chúng được nối với nhau bởi liên từ phụ thuộc như because, although, when,...

Ví dụ

When I was young, I went to the local library every week.

liên từ S V C, S V A A

(Khi tôi còn trẻ, tôi đã đi đến thư viện trong vùng mỗi tuần.)

We had sat in the classroom before our teacher came.

S V A liên từ S V

(Chúng tôi đã ngồi ngay ngắn trong lớp trước khi giáo viên đến.)

★ **Lưu ý:** Ngoài những loại câu được phân loại theo cấu trúc câu, chúng ta còn có một số loại câu khác được phân loại theo mục đích diễn đạt:

- Câu kể
- Câu hỏi
- Câu mệnh lệnh
- Câu cảm thán

Các em cũng phải chú ý đến tính khẳng định (xác thực) và phủ định (phủ nhận) của câu để dễ dàng tiếp cận chuyên đề thì động từ.

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Underline parts of the following sentences and identify whether they are simple, compound or complex sentences.

Example:

She did this homework last night. → Câu đơn (Simple sentence)

S V O A

1. Katie helped his brother with his chores so he paid her \$5.
2. We play video games on the couch after school.
3. If people plant more trees, the Earth will be greener.
4. I went to the store but at that time, the line was very long.
5. The water is cold but he decides to take a shower.
6. I couldn't call you because my phone ran out of battery.
7. She takes off the shoes and turns on the fan.
8. I spilled the water on the table.
9. Many people cut down forests, while the government tries to protect trees.
10. Children are creative and curious.
11. Sarah enjoys swimming, but she prefers hiking in the mountains.
12. The cat slept peacefully on the windowsill.
13. Although it was raining, John decided to go for a run.
14. Maria went to the store to buy groceries.
15. The dog barked loudly, and the neighbors complained.

Chuyên đề IV DANH TỪ VÀ LƯỢNG TỪ

NOUNS AND QUANTIFIERS

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. DANH TỪ

Danh từ là những từ dùng để gọi tên người, sự vật, hiện tượng, khái niệm. Danh từ trong tiếng Anh kí hiệu là N hoặc n (Noun).

Ví dụ: pencil (*bút chì*), Anna (*tên người*), trip (*chuyến đi*), computer (*máy tính*),...

1. Phân loại danh từ

a) Danh từ chung và danh từ riêng

Danh từ chung (Common Noun) tên chỉ chung một loại sự vật, trong khi đó danh từ riêng (Proper Noun) là tên riêng của một sự vật có thể là người, địa danh, địa phương,...

Ví dụ:

+ Danh từ chung: table, movie, house, umbrella, flower,...

+ Danh từ riêng: Matthew, Smith, Ha Long Bay, England, Ha Noi, January,...

b) Danh từ cụ thể và danh từ trừu tượng

Danh từ cụ thể (Concrete Noun) chỉ những sự vật mà em có thể nhìn thấy, cầm, nắm, sờ, nếm, ngửi. Trái với nó là danh từ trừu tượng (Abstract Noun) chủ yếu diễn tả cảm giác, cảm xúc, chất lượng, khái niệm.

Ví dụ:

+ Danh từ cụ thể: singer (*ca sĩ*), water (*nước*), hair (*tóc*), rice (*com*), machine (*máy móc*),...

+ Danh từ trừu tượng: happiness (*niềm vui*), luxury (*sự xa hoa*), dream (*giấc mơ*), poverty (*sự nghèo đói*),...

c) Danh từ ghép

Danh từ ghép (Compound Noun) là danh từ được hình thành từ hai từ trở lên.

Ví dụ:

+ sunset (*mặt trời lặn*), breakfast (*bữa sáng*), sunglasses (*kính râm*), sunflower (*hoa hướng dương*),...

d) Danh từ tập hợp

Danh từ tập hợp (Collective Noun) chỉ một nhóm người hoặc sự vật.

Ví dụ:

+ group (*nhóm*), family (*gia đình*), collection (*bộ sưu tập*), bouquet (*bó*),...

Một số cụm danh từ tập hợp nên nhớ:

A flock of birds/sheep/goats	Một đàn chim/cừu/dê
A herd of cattle/elephants/buffaloes/cows	Một đàn gia súc/voi/trâu/bò
A school of fish	Một đàn cá
A(n) colony/army of ants	Một đàn kiến
A bouquet/bunch of flowers	Một bó hoa

--	--

e) Danh từ đếm được và danh từ không đếm được

	Định nghĩa	Ví dụ
Danh từ đếm được (Countable Noun)	Là những sự vật tồn tại riêng lẻ và có thể đếm được bằng cách thêm số từ vào trước nó.	three monkeys (<i>ba con khỉ</i> - ☑) country (<i>quốc gia</i>) year (<i>năm</i>)
Danh từ không đếm được (Uncountable Noun)	Là những sự vật không đếm được khi thêm số từ vào đằng trước, thường phải đếm nó thông qua vật chứa hoặc đơn vị khác	two water (<i>hai nước</i> — ✕) two bottles of water (<i>hai chai nước</i> — ☑) money (<i>tiền</i>) power (<i>quyền lực</i>) air (<i>không khí</i>)

Danh từ đếm được chia ra làm hai loại: danh từ số ít và danh từ số nhiều.

► **Danh từ số ít (Singular Noun)** là danh từ có đơn vị đếm là một.

Trước danh từ số ít sẽ là mạo từ (a, an, the) hoặc số từ one.

Ví dụ

+ a wife (*một người vợ*), one bed (*một cái giường*), an app (*một ứng dụng*),...

► **Danh từ số nhiều (Plural Noun)** là danh từ có đơn vị đếm từ hai trở lên.

Các danh từ số nhiều thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm đuôi -s hoặc -es vào sau danh từ số ít.

Đuôi -s được thêm vào phần lớn trường hợp.

♦ Đuôi -es được thêm vào khi tận cùng của danh từ là -o, -s, -ch, -X, -sh, -z (ông Sáu chạy **xe SH** zò).

Ví dụ

+ fifty pigs (*năm mươi con lợn*), five flowers (*năm bông hoa*), one million bags (*một triệu cái túi*),...

+ ten boxes (*mười cái hộp*), two quizzes (*hai câu đố*), four benches (*bốn cái ghế băng*),...

★ **Ngoại lệ:** piano - pianos photo – photos

kimono - kimonos kilo – kilos

♦ Khi danh từ kết thúc bằng một **phụ âm + y** thì khi ở dạng số nhiều cần đổi y thành i rồi mới thêm es.

Ví dụ: baby - babies lady - ladies

♦ Khi danh từ kết thúc bằng **đuôi f, fe** thì khi ở dạng số nhiều cần đổi f, fe thành ves.

Ví dụ: knife - knives wife – wives

★ **Ngoại lệ:** roof – roofs leaf - leaves thief - thieves belief – beliefs

giraffe - giraffes proof - proofs

Sau đây là một số dạng danh từ số nhiều đặc biệt:

♦ Danh từ dạng số nhiều và số ít giống nhau: fish (cá), sheep (cừu), shrimp (tôm), deer (hươu), series

(chuỗi), species (loài),...

Ví dụ:

+ I bought a fish at market because I forgot that there are ten fish in the fridge. (Tôi đã mua một con cá ở chợ bởi vì tôi đã quên rằng tôi còn mười con cá trong tủ lạnh.)

+ There is only one species of humans but many species of dogs. (Chỉ có một loài người, nhưng có rất nhiều loài chó.)

♦ Danh từ dạng số nhiều không thêm s, es

Số ít	Số nhiều
Person	People (người)
Child	Children (trẻ em)
Man	Men (đàn ông)
Woman	Women (phụ nữ)
Tooth	Teeth (răng)
Foot	Feet
Mouse	Mice

Ví dụ:

+ This box is so heavy that it takes three men to lift it. One man cannot do it. (Cái hộp này nặng đến nỗi nó cần ba người đàn ông để nâng nó. Một người đàn ông không thể làm được.)

♦ Danh từ luôn ở dạng số nhiều (có s,es)

Những danh từ này là những sự vật thường đi theo cặp hoặc cấu tạo bởi những bộ phận đi theo cặp như: scissors (kéo - 2 lưỡi), pants (quần — 2 ống), shoes (giày - 2 chiếc), trousers (quần), glasses (kính),... Ngoài ra còn một số từ khác như goods (hàng hóa), clothes (quần áo), savings (tiền tiết kiệm),...

♦ Danh từ có “s” nhưng là danh từ không đếm được

news (tin tức) physics (vật lý) mathematics (toán)

athletics (điền kinh) linguistics (ngôn ngữ học)

Ví dụ:

+ Physics is a difficult subject. (Vật lý là một môn học khó.)

II. LƯỢNG TỪ

1. SOME và ANY: một vài, một chút

Some/Any + N - số nhiều/không đếm được

➤ **Some** đi với câu khẳng định hoặc lời mời, đề nghị.

Ví dụ:

She has some apples in her basket. (Cô ấy có vài quả táo trong giỏ.)

Would you like some water? (Bạn có muốn một chút nước không?)

Can I have some sugar? (Tôi có thể có một chút đường không?)

➤ **Any** đi với câu phủ định hoặc câu hỏi.

Ví dụ:

George doesn't have any brothers. (*George không có người anh em trai nào.*)

Do you bring any fruit ? (*Bạn có mang theo chút trái cây nào không ?*)

★ **Lưu ý:** any còn mang nghĩa là 'bất kì', theo sau bởi một danh từ số ít hoặc danh từ không đếm được và có thể dùng trong câu khẳng định.

Ví dụ:

You can call me any time. (*Bạn có thể gọi cho tôi bất cứ lúc nào.*)

If there are any mistakes, please tell your teacher. (*Neu co bat ki loi nào, hãy báo cho giáo viên của bạn.*)

2. MANY và MUCH: nhiều

Many và much thường được dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi

Many + N - số nhiều

Ví dụ:

How many eggs are in this cake? (*Có bao nhiêu quả trứng trong chiếc bánh này?*)

There aren't many trees in this area. (*Không có nhiều cây trong khu vực này lắm.*)

Much + N - không đếm được

Ví dụ:

Alice doesn't have much money. (*Alice không có nhiều tiền.*)

Have you got much change? (*Bạn có thay đổi nhiều không ?*)

➤ Ta dùng a lot of (=lots of), plenty of để thay thế cho nghĩa nhiều trong câu khẳng định.

Ví dụ:

I've got a lot of plans for today. (*Tôi có nhiều kế hoạch cho hôm nay.*)

You don't need to rush because we have plenty of time. (*Bạn không cần vội vì chúng ta có nhiều thời gian.*)

3. Few Và A Few/ Little Và A Little

Few Và A Few/ Little Và A Little đều mang nghĩa là một ít, rất ít

Few/ A few + N - số nhiều

➤ **Few:** ít và không đủ lượng để làm gì (phủ định).

➤ **A few:** ít nhưng đủ lượng để làm gì (khẳng định).

Ví dụ:

I have few eggs left in the fridge so I cannot make a cake. (*Tôi còn vài quả trứng trong tủ lạnh nên tôi không thể làm bánh được.*)

Because we still have a few apples, we don't need to go back to the store. (*Vì chúng tôi vẫn còn vài quả táo, chúng tôi không cần phải quay lại cửa hàng.*)

Little/ A little + N - không đếm được

- **Little:** ít và không đủ lượng để làm gì (phủ định).
- **A little:** ít nhưng đủ lượng để làm gì (khẳng định).

Ví dụ:

They had little money to spend. (Họ có rất ít tiền để tiêu.)

She saves a little money every month. (Cô ấy một tiết kiệm một ít tiền mỗi tháng.)

★ Lưu ý:

- Few và little có thể đi với một số từ như so, too, very để nhấn mạnh về lượng.

Ví dụ:

She gave me too little sauce. (Cô ấy cho tôi quá ít nước sốt.)

Little còn là tính từ mang nghĩa là nhỏ, bé.

Ví dụ:

My little cat is sleeping on the couch. (Chú mèo nhỏ của tôi đang ngủ trên sofa.)

4. Both Và Either/Neither

Both	Either/Neither
<p>➤ Both: cả hai - mang nghĩa khẳng định</p> <p>Ví dụ:</p> <p>Both cats (both of the cats) are sleeping on the bed. (Cả hai con mèo đang ngủ trên giường.)</p>	<p>➤ Either: một trong hai cái</p> <p>➤ Neither: không cái nào trong hai</p> <p>Ví dụ:</p> <p>There are two bottles and either bottle (either of them) contains water. (Có hai cái chai và cái nào cũng chứa nước.)</p> <p>Neither flight (neither of the flights) was delayed. (Không chuyến bay nào (trong hai chuyến) bị hoãn cả.)</p>

5. All Và None

All	None
<p>➤ All + N-số nhiều: tất cả</p> <p>= All of the/đại từ sở hữu + N-số nhiều</p>	<p>➤ None of the/đại từ sở hữu + N-đếm được/N-không đếm được</p>
<p>Ví dụ:</p> <p>All animals (all of the animals) have to eat in order to live. (Tất cả động vật phải ăn để sống.)</p>	<p>Ví dụ:</p> <p>She has three friends, but none (none of them) came to the party. (Cô ấy có 3 người bạn nhưng không ai đến bữa tiệc cả.)</p> <p>None là đại từ của 'no' và thường không theo sau bởi một danh từ.</p> <p>➤ No đi với mọi loại danh từ</p> <p>Ví dụ:</p>

I have no time for you. <i>(Tôi không có thời gian cho bạn.)</i>
--

6. Each Và Every

Each/Every + N-Số ít + V-số ít

Each và every đều có nghĩa là mỗi, từng. Tuy nhiên, each thường dùng để chỉ những đối tượng mang tính độc lập đơn lẻ với số lượng nhỏ còn every (có khi dịch là mọi) chỉ những đối tượng theo nhóm và có số lượng lớn.

Ví dụ:

The principal knows every student in the class. *(Hiệu trưởng biết mọi học sinh trong lớp.)*

Each hand has five fingers. *(Mỗi bàn tay có năm ngón tay.)*

7. Most

Most mang nghĩa là phần lớn, hầu hết và nó theo sau bởi cả danh từ đếm được và không đếm được.

Ví dụ:

Most people own a smartphone. *(Phần lớn mọi người đều sở hữu một chiếc điện thoại thông minh.)*

8. Another, Other, The Other

➤ **another + N-số ít:** một cái nữa/một cái khác

Ví dụ:

Your cup is empty. Would you like another cup of coffee? *(Tách của bạn hết rồi. Bạn có muốn một tách cà phê nữa không?)*

I want another dress. This one is too tight. *(Tôi muốn một cái váy khác. Cái này chật quá.)*

➤ **other + N-số nhiều/không đếm được:** những cái khác

Ví dụ:

Some music calms people; other music has the opposite effect. *(Một vài loại nhạc làm người ta bình tĩnh, những loại nhạc khác thì có tác dụng ngược lại.)*

This one's too big. Do you have it in other sizes? *(Cái này to quá. Bạn có những kích cỡ khác không?)*

➤ **the other + N-số ít:** cái còn lại trong hai cái

Ví dụ:

This Computer is new. The other computer is about five years old. *(Cái máy tính này thì mới. Cái còn lại thì đã được 5 năm rồi.)*

➤ **the other + N-số nhiều:** những cái còn lại

Ví dụ:

John and Pete are here. The other people haven't arrived yet. *(John và Pete ở đây rồi. Những người còn lại vẫn chưa tới.)*

★ Cách dùng trên của another, other và the other với vai trò là lượng từ. Tuy nhiên, others và the others chỉ có vai trò là một đại từ. Chúng không được theo sau bởi một danh từ.

➤ **Others = other + N-số nhiều:** những cái khác

➤ **The others** = **The other** + **N-số nhiều**: những cái còn lại

Ví dụ:

Some people think that we should reduce the the consumption of fossil fuel while others (= other people) disagree. (Một vài người nghĩ rằng chúng ta nên giảm thiểu tiêu thụ nhiên liệu hóa thạch trong khi những người khác không đồng tình.)

He had his hat in one basket and flowers in the others. (= the other baskets). (Anh ta đặt mũ trong một cái giỏ và những bông hoa trong những cái còn lại.)

KIẾN THỨC DỄ NHẦM LẤN

a number of và the number of

a number of + N-số nhiều + V-số nhiều: một số

the number of + N-số nhiều + V-số ít: số lượng của

Ví dụ:

A number of students join the meeting. (Một số học sinh tham gia cuộc họp.)

The number of students in the meeting is 300. (Số lượng học sinh trong cuộc họp là 300.)

Sau một số lượng từ như both, either, neither, all, none, most... đi với từ 'of' phải lưu ý thêm the, đại từ sở hữu hoặc đại từ tân ngữ vào sau.

Ví dụ:

All of students take part in the summer camp. ✗

All of the/his/her/their/our students take part in the summer camp. ✓

All of them take part in the summer camp. ✓

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Put the following nouns in countable and uncountable noun columns.

<i>pork</i>		<i>candy</i>		<i>mustard</i>		<i>website</i>		<i>milk</i>			
<i>wave</i>		<i>drop</i>		<i>wind</i>		<i>coffee</i>		<i>sand</i>		<i>seafood</i>	

Countable Noun (Danh từ đếm được)	Uncountable Noun (Danh từ không đếm được)

Exercise 2. Write the plural form of the following words.

Singular (Số ít)	Plural (Số nhiều)	Singular (Số ít)	Plural (Số nhiều)
potato		bottle	
cat		mouse	
leaf		fly	
man		flower	
car		parent	
class		bus	

key		knife	
-----	--	-------	--

Exercise 3. Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences. Write “True” if the sentence is correct.

1. Erik has knowledges about planting flowers.
2. We prepared a lot of foods for the dinner.
3. Golds played an important role in the United States’ economy.
4. She has gone through a lot of troubles but she’s still happy.
5. Book bring information and lessons.
6. I have two furnitures in my living room.
7. I need to buy some milk for the recipe.
8. He ate rices during his trip to Asia.
9. Alan drank three coffees this morning.
10. How many student are there in your class?

Exercise 4. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

1. How _____ money do you have in your wallet?
A. many B. much C. some D. a lot of
2. She needs to buy _____ bread from the bakery.
A. some B. much C. many D. few
3. There’s not _____ time left.
A. much B. many C. some D. a lot of
4. He is so thirsty but there isn’t _____ water in the house.
A. some B. many C. much D. any
5. She has _____ friends in her new school. Sometimes she feels so lonely.
A. few B. a few C. little D. a little
6. Mr. Black has been a client of this company for _____ years.
A. little B. much C. many D. some
7. _____ people know the answer to that question.
A. Much B. Many C. Little D. Any
8. The children never eat _____, but they seem healthy.
A. few B. any C. some D. much
9. "Is there _____ more soup?" - "No, I'm afraid there isn't."
A. any B. some C. many D. little
10. She was my _____ sister and I took care of her.
A. many B. much C. little D. any
11. This is a very difficult piece of music to play - it requires _____ concentration.
A. much B. a lot C. lots of D. many

12. I don't have _____ friends who live abroad.
A. much B. any C. some D. a lot
13. There isn't _____ paint left so we need to buy some more.
A. some B. little C. many D. any
14. We have time before the movie starts, let's grab popcorn.
A. few B. a few C. little D. a little
15. There is sugar left. We must buy another packet.
A. any B. some C. no D. much
16. Would you like to have _____ tea?
A. much B. some C. a lot of D. a plenty of
17. Alex made too _____ mistakes in his writing essay.
A. many B. much C. a lot of D. little
18. I feel happy for her. She has _____ friends but they are kind.
A. a little B. a few C. few D. little
19. _____ of my parents likes my boyfriend. They think he's too childish.
A. Neither B. Either C. Both D. No
20. _____ the shops in the city center open at 8 AM in the morning.
A. Much B. Much of C. Most of D. Some
21. Lily has spent _____ time and money on watching TikTok videos
A. a number of B. a few of C. a great deal of D. many of
22. _____ students enjoyed the field trip.
A. each B. all C. every D. much
23. There was _____ sugar left in the jar.
A. neither B. either C. both D. no
24. _____ of the students enjoyed the field trip.
A. Most B. Much C. Any D. Every
25. She doesn't have _____ money to buy a new car.
A. many B. much C. some D. few
26. There are _____ apples left in the basket.
A. all B. every C. few D. much
27. Peter only speaks _____ English so it is very difficult to communicate with him.
A. few B. much C. a few D. little
28. "Do you prefer pork or beef?" "I don't like _____"
A. either B. neither C. none D. many
29. There aren't _____ people at the party.
A. much B. many C. some D. a few

30. There were _____ mistakes in the report.
A. a lot B. much C. a few D. any
31. Would you like _____ tea?
A. any B. many C. few D. some
32. We need _____ information before making a decision.
A. much B. many C. some D. a few
33. How _____ brothers and sisters do you have?
A. much B. many C. some D. a few
34. _____ of the students passed the test so they must take another one next week.
A. No B. None C. Either D. Neither
35. _____ days of the week are good for me, except Monday.
A. Another B. Other C. The other D. Others
36. She has _____ of time to finish the assignment.
A. enough B. a plenty C. a lot D. little
37. She has _____ difficulty understanding the lesson.
A. much B. many C. some D. a few
38. There aren't _____ good movies playing at the cinema.
A. much B. many C. some D. a few
39. Please pass me _____ book; I finished reading this one.
A. another B. other C. the other D. the others
40. There were _____ people in Cairo who would believe it.
A. a large number of B. a large amount of
C. a great deal of D. a plenty of
41. Sadly, _____ of the house was destroyed by fire in 1828.
A. both B. each C. most D. none
42. Why do _____ people live longer than other people?
A. any B. much C. some D. all
43. _____ of the students in the class passed the exam.
A. Much B. Each C. Every D. All
44. Both candidates tried their best but _____ was selected for the job.
A. both B. either C. neither D. any
45. I saw _____ movies last weekend.
A. much B. many C. some D. little
46. His mom was at _____ side of the street.
A. other B. the other C. another D. others
47. Children need to be taught to have respect for people's belongings.

A. others B. other C. another D. the others

48. people understand the difference, so Mr. Brown has to explain it one more time.

A. Little B. A little C. Few D. A few

49. You can have _____ cake; they're both delicious.

A. either B. some C. both D. neither

50. _____ of the students passed the exam with flying colors.

A. Both B. Every C. Any D. Much

Topic 2

WONDERS IN VIET NAM AND AROUND THE WORLD

1. TỔNG HỢP TỪ VỰNG CẦN NHỚ

STT	Từ	Từ loại	Nghĩa
1	access	v	tiếp cận, kết nối
2	accommodation	n	nơi ở
3	admire	v	ngưỡng mộ
	admiration	n	sự ngưỡng mộ
4	adventure	n	cuộc phiêu lưu
5	annual	adj	hàng năm
6	border	n	ranh giới, biên giới
7	brehtaking	adj	đẹp xiêu lòng
8	cable car	np	cáp treo
9	camel	n	lạc đà
10	cave	n	hang động
11	cliff	n	vách đá
12	consider	v	cân nhắc
13	contribute	v	đóng góp
14	charming	adj	cuốn hút
15	check in >< check out	vp	thủ tục vào >< thủ tục ra
16	destination	n	điểm đến
17	develop development	v n	phát triển sự phát triển
18	diverse diversity	adj n	đa dạng sự đa dạng
19	dune	n	cồn cát
20	explore exploration	v n	khám phá sự khám phá
21	fine	n	tiền phạt
22	float	v	nôi
23	flora and fauna	phr	thảm động thực vật
24	form	v	hình thành

	formation	n	sự hình thành
25	get away	vp	đi nghỉ/ rời xa khỏi
26	get on >< get off	vp	lên (tàu, xe bus,...) >< xuống (tàu, xe buýt,...)
27	get in >< get out	vp	lên (xe hơi, taxi,...) >< xuống (xe hơi, taxi,...)
28	hesitate hesitation	v n	chần chừ, lưỡng lự sự lưỡng lự
29	impress impressive impression	v adj n	gây ấn tượng có ấn tượng ấn tượng
30	island	n	hòn đảo
31	landscape	n	phong cảnh
32	litter	v	vứt rác (nơi công cộng)
33	locate location	v n	nằm ở vị trí
34	magnificent	adj	lộng lẫy
35	majestic	adj	tráng lệ, huy hoàng
36	massive	adj	to lớn
37	memory memorable	n adj	kỉ niệm, kỉ ức đáng nhớ
38	mountain range	np	rặng núi
39	nomadic	adj	du cư
40	occur	v	xảy ra
41	outstanding	adj	nổi bật, vượt trội
42	paradise	n	thiên đường
43	peak = summit	n n	đỉnh núi
44	permit = allow	v v	cho phép
45	pick up	vp	đón
46	possess	v	sở hữu
47	possession	n	của cải, tài sản
48	rainforest	n	rừng mưa
49	recognize	v	công nhận/thừa nhận
50	risk	v	liều

	risky	adj	mạo hiểm
51	scenery	n	cảnh đẹp
52	scenic	adj	đẹp (cảnh)
53	set off	vp	khởi hành
54	spectacular	adj	ngạc nục
55	spoil	V	làm hỏng, hủy hoại
56	sustainable	adj	bền vững
57	take off	vp	cởi (trang phục)
58	tourist attraction	np	điểm thu hút khách du lịch
59	travel agent	np	đại lý du lịch
60	underground	adj	ngầm, dưới lòng đất
61	unique	adj	duy nhất
62	volcano volcano eruption	n np	núi lửa núi lửa phun trào
63	volume	n	thể tích

2. TỔNG HỢP CẤU TRÚC CẦN NHỚ

STT	Cụm	Nghĩa
1	be amazed by sth	kinh ngạc bởi
2	be crazy about sth/V-ing	cực kì thích gì
3	be famous for	nổi tiếng vì
4	can't help + V-ing	không thể ngừng
5	eager to V	hào hức làm gì
6	keep + V-ing	cứ làm gì
7	live on sth	sống dựa vào (những thứ cần thiết)
8	don't mind + V-ing	không phiền làm gì
9	be popular with	phổ biến với
10	see sb off	tiễn ai

★ Cấu trúc với used to + V-inf: nói về thói quen trong quá khứ

+ Khẳng định: S + used to + V-inf

+ Phủ định: S + didn't use to/ never used to + V-inf

+ Nghi vấn: Did + S + use to + V- inf?

Ví dụ:

She used to work as a teacher. (Cô ấy từng làm việc như một giáo viên.)

They didn't use to travel by car. (Họ đã không hay di chuyển bằng ô tô.)

Did he use to walk? (*Anh ta từng hay đi bộ chứ?*)

★ **Cấu trúc be/get/become used to + V-ing: nói về việc dần quen với việc gì**

Ví dụ:

I am used to working overtime in this company. (*Tôi quen dần với việc làm việc ngoài giờ ở công ty này.*)

Are you used to getting up at 6 a.m every day? (*Bạn đã quen dậy lúc 6 giờ sáng mỗi ngày chưa?*)

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Match the words with the suitable definition.

1. Sustainable	a. What you see in an area of land, like hills, forests, and rivers
2. Landscape	b. Needs to be done right away because it's important or serious
3. Diversity	c. To know or accept something as true or real
4. Recognize	d. Many different types of plants, animals, and other living things in one place
5. Spectacular	e. Can keep going without hurting nature
6. Memorable	f. Amazing or impressive to see
7. Urgent	g. Something you won't forget easily because it's special or important

Exercise 2. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

- The landscape of the mountain range was truly ____, offering a view that left visitors breathless.
A. boring B. breathtaking C. memorable D. amazed
- The crowd is waiting for the ____ show, expecting something unforgettable.
A. spectacular B. urgent C. unimpressive D. dull
- Exploring the Phong Nha-Ke Bang National Park in Vietnam provides an unforgettable adventure through ____.
A. landscapes B. paradises C. caves D. monuments
- From the ____, they could see the beautiful land below, a reward for their effort.
A. foot B. valley C. summit D. middle
- With maps, the adventurers set off to ____ the unknown forest.
A. destroy B. explore C. build D. ignore
- The Imperial City of Hue is widely ____ as a symbol of Vietnam's rich history and architectural heritage.
A. admired B. located C. recognized D. declined
- Great Wall of China is a popular ____ for both locals and tourists.
A. destination B. valley C. peak D. adventure
- Travelers often ____ the majestic limestone formations of Ha Long Bay in Vietnam.
A. possess B. admire C. criticize D. spoil
- I was ____ by how massive the mountain range is.

- A. amazed B. risked C. admired D. hesitated
10. The cultural ____ of London attracts tourists from around the world.
- A. impression B. impressive C. diverse D. diversity
11. The breathtaking ____ surprised travelers in minutes.
- A. exploration B. accommodations
- C. scenery D. adventures
12. The new library was designed to be ____ to everyone in the school, with elevators for all exits.
- A. complicated B. hidden C. accessible D. urgent
13. John received a speeding ticket and had to pay a.
- A. money B. fine C. reward D. gift
14. Staying in a traditional stilt house offers a unique ____ experience when visiting the ethnic villages of Sapa in Vietnam.
- A. underground B. nomadic C. leaving D. accommodation
15. After years of service, the employee finally received ____ for his contributions to the company.
- A. recognition B. penalty C. fine D. reward
16. Volunteers make an important ____ to the community through their time and effort.
- A. recognition B. contribution C. paradise D. challenge
17. In the world of natural ____, the Grand Canyon stands out for its breathtaking views.
- A. diversity B. mountain C. wonders D. scenes
18. The terraced fields of Sapa offer visitors an ____ view of Vietnam's natural beauty.
- A. normal B. risky C. average D. impressive
19. The island has a unique ____, situated between two oceans.
- A. dune B. paradise C. adventure D. location
20. Ais a large hole in the ground or in the side of a hill or mountain.
- A. cave B. ocean C. forest D. bridge
21. Sometimes, when facing a difficult decision, people ____ before taking action.
- A. hesitate B. access C. dance D. allow
22. Your first ____ of a book often influences whether you continue reading it or not.
- A. development B. memory C. location D. impression
23. The school prides itself on improving ____, welcoming students from different backgrounds and cultures.
- A. hesitation B. diversity C. shyness D. admiration
24. The ____ of the Egyptian pyramids required careful planning and engineering skills.
- A. attraction B. location C. formation D. contribution
25. The city's annual ____ projects include building new parks and improving roads.
- A. destruction B. recognition C. contribution D. development

Exercise 3. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, c or D) for each of following questions

1. Before boarding the plane, passengers must ____ their luggage at the front desk.
A. check in B. check out C. see off D. take up
2. We need to ____ early tomorrow if we want to reach our destination before sunset.
A. get off B. get on C. set off D. go off
3. After the farewell party, we'll ____ our friend ____ at the airport to say goodbye.
A. pick/up B. see/off C. get/away D. tum/off
4. When the bus arrives, make sure to ____ quickly so we can find seats together.
A. get in B. get on C. get off D. get out
5. If you're feeling stressed, it's a good idea to ____ for a weekend to relax and recharge.
A. check out B. get away C. bring back D. try out
6. Before leaving the hotel, make sure to ____ and take all personal belongings.
A. check in B. check out C. get on D. set off
7. We'll need to ____ soon if we want to avoid rush hour traffic.
A. pick up B. run out C. set off D. see off
8. When Sarah's car broke down, she called her friend to ____ and give her a ride home.
A. check her in B. let her down C. pick her up D. see her off
9. When arriving home from the gym, don't forget to ____ your sweaty clothes before taking a shower.
A. get up B. take off C. take on D. turn up
10. When the weather gets too hot, many people like to ____ to the beach for a refreshing swim.
A. look after B. go for C. take off D. get away

Exercise 4. Rewrite the following sentences by using the given words.

1. She couldn't stop laughing at his jokes. (HELP)

→

2. They didn't care about getting dirty and continued playing soccer. (MIND)

→

3. He continued to study late last night. (KEPT)

→

4. The city is known for its beautiful landscapes. (FAMOUS)

→

5. The TV show is enjoyed by people of all ages. (POPULAR)

→

Exercise. Using the correct form of "used to". You may have to use some negative forms.

1. When John was a child, he _____ (PLAY) soccer every weekend with his friends.
2. My grandmother younger _____ (BUY) clothes for all of us when we were.
3. Before she got her new job, Sarah _____ (NOT WORK) late nights at the office.
4. _____ they _____ (GO) camping in the mountains?
5. He _____ (SMOKE) cigarettes, but he quit five years ago.

Exercise 6. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct arrangement of the sentences to make a meaningful paragraph/letter for the following questions.

1.

- a. What was its original purpose?
- b. Hey, Jamie. Did you know the Great Pyramid of Giza is over 4,500 years old?
- c. Yes, I think it's the only one still standing! It's really amazing.
- d. Really? That's incredible! How was it built?
- e. It was built as a tomb for the Pharaoh Khufu and it's one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World.
- f. It's believed that it was constructed using millions of limestone blocks, with the help of thousands of workers.

A. b-c-d-e-a-f B. b-d-f-a-e-c C. b-e-d-f-a-c D. b-c-d-e-a-f

2.

- a. Besides, it is the longest wall in the world and is truly a great sight.
- b. Sadly, due to natural erosion, 30% of the Great Wall has been destroyed.
- c. The Great Wall of China is an interesting destination for tourists.
- d. It was built in that location to prevent China from invasion and protect trade routes.
- e. However, government is trying to recover it.
- f. Firstly, it is a series of walls that was built over 500 years ago in northern China.

A. c-d-f-a-b-e B. c-d-e-f-a-b C. c-f-d-a-b-e D. c - f-d-b - e - a

3.

- a. Mountain climbing involves a few key steps.
- b. Finally, also remember to be prepared for emergencies with a first aid kit.
- c. Thirdly, wear the right gear, like climbing shoes and a harness before climbing.
- d. First, plan your climb and check the weather.

e. Climb slowly, stay hydrated, and use proper techniques.

f. Next, train your body to handle the climb.

A. a-d-f-c-e-b B. a-d-f-c-b-e C. a-d-c-e-b-f D. a-e-d-f-c-b

4.

a. The site has impressive walls, grand palaces, and beautiful temples of Vietnamese emperor.

b. However, some parts of the site cannot avoid the ravage of time and be ruined.

c. Visiting the Imperial City of Hue is like stepping into history.

d. These places attract a lot of visitors each year.

e. Moreover, the system of tombs also very majestic.

A. d-e-c-a-b B. c-d-a-e-b C. d-c-e-b-a D. c-a-e-d-b

5.

a. Finally, add the roof and complete any final touches, such as painting and installing fixtures.

b. If you have any questions, feel free to ask! Warm regards.

c. Dear Kevin, I hope this letter finds you well. If you're considering building a stilt house, here are some essential steps to guide you.

d. Then, build the main frame of the house on top of the stilts

e. Next, install the stilts securely into the ground.

f. First, start by creating a detailed plan including the number of stilts needed.

A. c-f-d-e-a-b B. c-f-e-a-d-b C. c-f-e-d-a-b D. c-b-e-d-b-a

Chuyên đề V ĐẠI TỪ

PRONOUNS

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Đại từ là loại từ được dùng để thay thế cho danh từ hoặc cụm danh từ đứng trước nó để tránh việc lặp từ hoặc dài dòng trong câu.

1. Đại từ nhân xưng (Personal Pronouns)

Đại từ nhân xưng làm chủ ngữ	Đại từ nhân xưng làm tân ngữ	Ngôi	Nghĩa
I	Me	Thứ nhất số ít	Tôi
You	You	Thứ 2 số ít/nhiều	Bạn, các bạn
We	Us	Thứ nhất số nhiều	Chúng ta
They	Them	Thứ 3 số nhiều	Họ, bọn chúng
He	Him	Thứ 3 số ít	Anh ấy
She	Her	Thứ 3 số ít	Cô ấy
It	It	Thứ 3 số ít	Nó

➤ Vai trò của đại từ nhân xưng

- Làm chủ ngữ.

Ví dụ:

John lives in London. He drives to work every day. (*John sống ở Luân Đôn. Anh ấy lái xe đi làm mỗi ngày.*)

Đại từ “he” thay thế cho danh từ riêng “John” trước đó và “he” là chủ ngữ

- Làm tân ngữ

Ví dụ:

If anyone phones, tell them I'll be back later. (*Nếu ai đó gọi, nói với họ tôi sẽ quay lại sau.*)

I lent him several books, but he hasn't read any of them. (*Tôi cho anh ta mượn vài quyển sách, nhưng anh ta chưa đọc quyển nào cả.*)

2. Đại từ sở hữu, tính từ sở hữu

Đại từ nhân xưng	Tính từ sở hữu	Đại từ sở hữu	Nghĩa
I	my	mine	của tôi
You	your	yours	của bạn
We	our	ours	của chúng ta
They	their	theirs	của họ, chúng
He	his	his	của anh ấy
She	her	hers	của cô ấy
It	its	its	của nó

➤ Tính từ sở hữu theo sau bởi một danh từ. Còn đại từ sở hữu thì thường dùng để thay thế cho cụm tính từ sở hữu và danh từ.

Ví dụ:

His house is very big, but her house is quite small.

= His house is very big, but hers is quite small.

(*Nhà của anh ấy rất to nhưng nhà của cô ấy thì khá nhỏ.*)

Sở hữu cách

Ta dùng sở hữu cách để nói về sự sở hữu của người, động vật, tổ chức, quốc gia,...

Khi danh từ kết thúc bằng ‘s’ ta chỉ dùng dấu ‘ đằng sau danh từ. Với những đuôi khác, ta dùng ‘s.

Ví dụ:

Tom's house (*nhà của Tom*) my boss' car (*xe của sếp tôi*)

★ Lưu ý: không dùng sở hữu cách với đồ vật mà dùng danh từ để phân loại.

the kitchen's table the car's key s

the kitchen table the car key

3. Đại từ chỉ định

	Gần (này)	Xa (kia, đó)
Số ít	This	That
Số nhiều	These	Those

Đại từ chỉ định là những đại từ được sử dụng để chỉ ra cụ thể vị trí của người hoặc vật trong không gian hoặc thời gian.

Ví dụ:

This is a beautiful picture. *(Đây là một bức tranh đẹp.)*

There are 4 oranges on the table. Those are from Vietnam. *(Có 4 quả cam trên bàn. Những quả cam đó đến từ Việt Nam.)*

★ Lưu ý: Những từ trên còn có cách dùng rất phổ biến là làm tính từ đứng trước danh từ và cũng dùng để xác định vị trí.

Ví dụ:

That box is too heavy. *(Cái hộp đó quá nặng.)*

4. Đại từ phản thân

Đại từ nhân xưng	Đại từ phản thân	Nghĩa	Đại từ nhân xưng
I	myself	chính tôi/tự tôi	I
You	yourself/yourselfs	chính bạn/chính các bạn	You
We	ourselves	chính chúng ta/tự chúng ta	We
They	themselves	chính họ, chúng/tự họ, chúng	They
He	himself	chính anh ấy/tự anh ấy	He
She	herself	chính cô ấy/tự cô ấy	She
It	itself	chính nó/tự nó	It

➤ Vị trí và vai trò của đại từ phản thân:

- Làm tân ngữ khi chủ ngữ và tân ngữ là cùng một người, đối tượng.

Ví dụ:

He introduced himself. *(Anh ta tự giới thiệu mình.)*

They've bought themselves a new car. *(Họ tự mua cho mình một chiếc xe mới.)*

- Đứng ngay sau danh từ để nhấn mạnh danh từ đó.

Ví dụ:

Mary herself cried a lot when her father passed away. *(Chính bản thân Mary đã khóc rất nhiều khi bố cô ấy qua đời.)*

5. Đại từ bất định

Đại từ bất định không chỉ đích danh một đối tượng hay vật nào đó mà chỉ nói chung chung.

	Đại từ bất định	Nghĩa
Chỉ người	someone/somebody	ai đó
	everyone/ everybody	mọi người
	anyone/anybody	bất kì ai
	no one/nobody	không ai
Chỉ vật	something	thứ gì đó

	everything	mọi thứ
	anything	bất kì thứ gì
	nothing	không gì

➤ Vị trí và vai trò của đại từ bất định

- Làm chủ ngữ

Ví dụ

Everyone brought their partner to the party. *(Tất cả mọi người mang theo người đồng hành đến bữa tiệc.)*

- Làm tân ngữ

Ví dụ

The police questioned everybody in the room. *(Cảnh sát đã tra hỏi tất cả mọi người trong căn phòng.)*

6. Đại từ quan hệ

Ở phần này sẽ chỉ liệt kê những đại từ quan hệ và cách dùng cơ bản của chúng. Đại từ quan hệ sẽ được đi sâu hơn trong chuyên đề Mệnh đề quan hệ.

	Chủ ngữ	Tân ngữ	Sở hữu
Chỉ người	who	whom	
Chỉ vật	which/that	which/that	
Chỉ sự sở hữu			whose

7. Đại từ nghi vấn

Đại từ nghi vấn	Nghĩa
Who	ai
Whom	ai
Which	cái nào
What	cái gì
Whose	của ai/cái gì

➤ Vị trí và vai trò của đại từ nghi vấn:

- Làm chủ ngữ

Ví dụ:

Who picked Lisa up? *(Ai đã đón Lisa vậy?)*

What creates tides? *(Cái gì tạo ra thủy triều?)*

- Làm tân ngữ

Ví dụ:

What are you playing? *(Bạn đang chơi gì vậy?)*

Whom did you talk to? *(Bạn đã nói chuyện với ai?)*

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Fill in the blank with one suitable personal pronoun

Example: My sister is Emily. She is a student.

1. The tallest student in our class is Tom. _____ often plays basketball.
2. Your book is on the shelf. Please bring _____ here.
3. Our favorite movie is 'The Lion King.' _____ watch it together every weekend.
4. My parents are teachers. I admire _____ greatly.
5. Our car is old. They want to sell _____.
6. Mary's dream job is to become a pilot. All family members will be proud of _____.
7. Your favorite food is pizza. _____ could eat it every day.
8. My little brother is Peter. I often play games with _____.
9. My sister and I love painting. My mom bought _____ some crayons yesterday.
10. An old lady gives you and _____ an apple.

Exercise 2. Fill in the blank with one suitable possessive adjective or one possessive pronoun

Example: This is my sister.

1. We need to find _____ keys so we can get home.
2. Where is _____ pen? I must give it back to Jane this afternoon.
3. His favorite color is blue. It's _____ favorite.
4. She showed me _____ new painting. She has drawn it for a week.
5. My phone is black. Cindy buys the same one but _____ is blue.
6. They just bought a car. That car is _____.
7. I see Brian with a man this morning. It's _____ grandfather.
8. The house has _____ own swimming pool.
9. This is not your room. _____ is the room on the top floor, on the left.
10. Could I borrow a pen? I've lost _____.

Exercise 3. Fill in the blank with this/that/these/those.

1. _____ are my sisters, and _____ people over there are my friend's grandparents.
2. _____ room over there is empty.
3. Pass me _____ flowers, please.
4. Come here and look at _____ photo.
5. Let me introduce you. _____ is Louis.
6. Oh, they are here. _____ are my friends, Kevin and Paul.
7. Look at beautiful flowers over there. _____ are mine.
8. I think _____ restaurant is too noisy. Let's go somewhere else.
9. _____ are playing in the garden over there. They look excited.
10. Hey Adam, can you take _____ book and put it on the table over there.

Exercise 4. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

1. Mary prepared dinner _____.

- A. herself B. her C. hers D. herselfes
2. They painted the room _____.
- A. themselves B. theirself C. their D. them
3. I saw _____ at the store yesterday.
- A. he B. him C. his D. himself
4. My sister and _____ went shopping yesterday.
- A. me B. myself C. I D. mine
5. _____ car broke down on the highway.
- A. Their B. They C. Them D. Theirs
6. The cat chased tail.
- A. its B. it C. itself D. Ø
7. The children enjoyed _____ at the playground.
- A. theirselves B. themselves C. themself D. their
8. She left the room without saying _____.
- A. everything B. something C. anything D. nothing
9. The keys aren't on the table. Did you see _____?
- A. they B. them C. their D. theirs
10. Could you please give _____ a hand with these boxes?
- A. he B. him C. his D. himself
11. _____ knows the answer to that question.
- A. Anybody B. Anyone C. Nobody D. Something
12. Sarah and _____ are best friends.
- A. she B. her C. hers D. herself
13. _____ bike is blue.
- A. Their B. They C. Them D. Theirs
14. Is this coat _____?
- A. yours B. your C. you D. yourself
15. _____ called you while you were out.
- A. Anybody B. Anyone C. Everyone D. Someone
16. _____ forgot to turn off the lights before leaving.
- A. Somebody B. Anyone C. Something D. Anything
17. The house on the corner is _____.
- A. their B. them C. theirs D. they
18. _____ needs to finish their homework before dinner.
- A. Somebody B. Everyone C. Nobody D. Anyone
19. We need to believe in _____.

- A. ourselves B. our C. us D. ourself
20. I have never been _____ more beautiful than Florence.
A. somewhere B. anywhere C. nowhere D. everywhere
21. _____ always brings snacks to the movie theater.
A. They B. Them C. Their D. Theirs
22. She is going to the concert by _____.
A. her B. she C. herself D. hers
23. Could you bring _____ a glass of water, please?
A. us B. we C. our D. ours
24. They are planning to take _____ on a trip around the world.
A. we B. us C. our D. ourselves
25. I think this cake is _____.
A. mine B. my C. me D. myself
26. _____ saw _____ at the mall yesterday.
A. She / him B. He / their C. They / his D. Us / them
27. The decision is _____ to make.
A. our B. ours C. us D. we
28. _____ is the best option for _____.
A. It / us B. Its / us C. It's / we D. Its / we
29. The cat licked _____ paw.
A. its B. it's C. it D. itself
30. There's _____ in the drawer - I took everything out.
A. anything B. everything C. nothing D. something

Chuyên đề VI MẠO TỪ

ARTICLES

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Mạo từ trong tiếng Anh (Articles) là những từ dùng để nhận biết danh từ được nhắc đến là xác định hay không xác định. mạo từ đứng trước danh từ và chức năng của nó là dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ.

I. MẠO TỪ KHÔNG XÁC ĐỊNH (A/AN)

➤ “an” được theo sau bởi danh từ bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm. Thường những nguyên âm được bắt đầu bằng các chữ cái “u, e, o, a, i” (UÊ OÃI).

Ví dụ:

an apple /' aspl/ - *một quả táo*

an umbrella /Am breb/ - *một cái ô*

➤ “a” được theo sau bởi danh từ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm.

Ví dụ:

a bottle /'ba:tl/ - *một cái chai*

a computer /kam pjutor/ - *một cái máy tính*

★ Lưu ý: một số từ bắt đầu bởi ‘UÊ OÃI’ nhưng phiên âm của chúng lại bắt đầu bằng phụ âm, ta dùng “a”. Ngược lại, một số từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm nhưng là âm câm và kể nó là một nguyên âm, ta dùng “an”.

Ví dụ:

a university /ju:m'v3:rsoti/ - *một trường đại học*

an hour /' aoor/ - *một giờ*

1. Dùng "a/an" với danh từ số ít mang ý nghĩa chung, không nhắc đến cái cụ thể.

Ví dụ:

Have you been to an ice rink? (*Bạn đã bao giờ đến một sân trượt băng chưa?*)

Trong ví dụ trên, khi dùng “an”, sân trượt băng đó có thể là bất cứ sân trượt băng nào chứ không ám chỉ một sân nào cụ thể.

2. Dùng "a/an" với nghề nghiệp

Ví dụ:

She's a gardener. (*Cô ấy là một người làm vườn.*)

He's an ambulance driver. (*Anh ta là một tài xế xe cứu thương.*)

3. Dùng "a/an" trong một số cụm lượng từ

- a/an + đơn vị + of (a litre of, a bowl of,...)

We just made a big bowl of pasta. (*Chúng tôi vừa làm xong một tô lớn mì ống.*)

- a lot of

She eats a lot of fruit. (*Cô ấy ăn rất nhiều hoa quả.*)

- a number of

I decided not to go, for a number of reasons. (Tôi đã quyết định không đi, vì một vài lí do.)

- an amount of

An amount of water has been polluted. (Một lượng nước đã bị ô nhiễm.)

II. MẠO TỪ XÁC ĐỊNH (THE)

The theo sau bởi cả danh từ đếm được và không đếm được.

1. Dùng the trước danh từ mang ý nghĩa cụ thể.

Ví dụ:

+ They just opened a new sport center. Have you been to the ice rink? (Họ mới mở cửa một trung tâm thể thao. Bạn đã đến sân trượt băng chưa?)

Trong ví dụ này, ‘the ice rink’ - sân trượt băng ở câu thứ hai đã được xác định vì được ngầm hiểu là sân trượt băng của trung tâm mới này.

+ When I came in, the shelf was empty. The books were all over the floor. (Khi tôi bước vào, cái kệ trống không. Những quyển sách vương đầy dưới đất.)

Trong ví dụ này, ‘the books’ - những quyển sách trong câu thứ hai được ngầm hiểu là những quyển sách trên kệ.

2. Dùng the với phát minh, nhạc cụ, tổ chức văn hóa.

Ví dụ:

The computer must be the greatest invention ever. (Máy tính hẳn là phát minh vĩ đại nhất.)

The violin sounds different to the piano. (Đàn vi-ô-lông nghe khác với đàn pi-a-nô.)

I love plays at the opera. (Tôi yêu những vở kịch tại nhà hát.)

3. Dùng the với những thứ mọi người đều biết vì nó là duy nhất.

Ví dụ:

The earth moves around the sun. (Trái Đất quay quanh Mặt Trời.)

Will the government ban smoking? (Chính phủ sẽ cấm hút thuốc chứ?)

Ngoài ra chúng ta còn có: the moon (mặt trăng), the universe (vũ trụ), the past (quá khứ), the present (hiện tại), the future (tương lai), the president (tổng thống),...

4. Dùng the với so sánh nhất

Ví dụ:

The blue whale is the biggest animal on Earth. (Cá voi xanh là loài lớn nhất thế giới.)

This new car is by far the most powerful one on the market. (Cái xe này là cái mạnh nhất thị trường hiện nay.)

5. Dùng the với số thứ tự

the first (thứ nhất), the second (thứ hai), the third (thứ ba), the fourth (thứ tư), ...

the next (tiếp theo)

the last (cuối cùng)

Ví dụ:

She is the last person to leave the room. (Cô ấy là người cuối cùng rời căn phòng.)

6. Dùng the với tính từ để chỉ một bộ phận người trong xã hội.

the rich (người giàu), the poor (người nghèo), the old (người già), the young (người trẻ), the disabled (người khuyết tật),...

Ví dụ:

The young are facing unemployment. (Người trẻ đang đối mặt với vấn đề thất nghiệp.)

7. Dùng the với núi, dãy núi, quần đảo, sông, biển, đại dương, hồ, sa mạc.

Ví dụ:

+ The Alps stretches across 8 countries. (Núi An-pơ trải dài qua 8 quốc gia.)

+ The Panama Canal creates a link between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. (Kênh đào Panama tạo ra một liên kết giữa Đại Tây Dương và Thái Bình Dương.)

8. Dùng the với tên một số quốc gia.

+ The Maldives (Cộng Hòa Man-đi-vơ)

+ The Philippines (Phi-líp-pin)

+ The Netherlands (Hà Lan)

+ The United States of America (Hợp Chúng Quốc Hoa Kỳ)

+ The United Kingdom (Vương Quốc Anh)

+ The United Arab Emirates (UAE - Các tiểu vương quốc Ả Rập Thống Nhất)

9. Dùng the với các từ chỉ phương hướng.

The east (phía Đông), the west (phía Tây), the South (phía Bắc), the north (phía Nam).

Ví dụ:

The east of the country is especially popular with tourists. (Phía đông của đất nước đặc biệt nổi tiếng với khách du lịch.)

III. KHÔNG DÙNG MẠO TỪ

1. Không dùng mạo từ với danh từ số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được mang ý nghĩa chung, không được nhắc đến cụ thể.

Ví dụ:

+ Books are so important in my life. (Sách rất quan trọng trong cuộc sống của tôi.)

Trong ví dụ trên, 'books' - những quyển sách ở đây là danh từ số nhiều và ám chỉ sách nói chung, không nhắc đến những quyển sách cụ thể nào.

+ I love food. (Tôi yêu đồ ăn.)

Trong ví dụ trên, 'food' - đồ ăn là danh từ không đếm được và ám chỉ đồ ăn nói chung.

2. Không dùng mạo từ trước các Bực độ, châu lục, quốc gia, quận, bang, thành phố, đường.

Ví dụ:

Asia is home to many rare species. (Châu Á là nhà của nhiều loài động vật hiếm.)

★ Lưu ý: Các ngọn núi khi được nhắc đến một cách đơn lẻ hoặc trong tên đã có 'Mount' hoặc các hồ

trong tên đã có 'Lake' thì không đi với mạo từ.

Ví dụ:

Mount Fuji is a symbol of Japan. (*Ngọn núi Phú Sĩ là một biểu tượng của Nhật Bản.*)

3. Không dùng mạo từ trước tên môn học, môn thể thao.

Ví dụ:

+ Mathematics is quite difficult for me to understand. (*Toán khá khó hiểu đối với tôi.*)

+ We usually play volleyball every Sunday morning. (*Chúng tôi hay chơi bóng chuyền vào mỗi sáng Chủ nhật.*)

4. Không dùng mạo từ trước tên của các bữa ăn.

breakfast (*bữa sáng*), lunch (*bữa trưa*), dinner (*bữa tối*), supper (*bữa đêm*)

Ví dụ:

She had rice and fish for lunch. (*Cô ấy đã ăn cơm với cá cho bữa trưa.*)

5. Không dùng mạo từ sau tính từ sở hữu hoặc sở hữu cách.

Ví dụ:

+ Her dress is so gorgeous. (*Chiếc váy của cô ấy thật lộng lẫy.*)

Dùng 'her dress' chứ không dùng 'her the dress', vì tính từ sở hữu her đã đóng vai trò làm từ xác định cho danh từ.

+ Pamela's jacket was very pricey. (*Chiếc áo khoác của Pamela đã từng rất đắt.*)

6. Không dùng mạo từ với hành tinh, chòm sao.

Ví dụ:

Venus is the closest planet to Earth. (*Sao Kim là hành tinh gần Trái Đất nhất.*)

7. Không dùng mạo từ trước các ngày lễ.

+ Thanksgiving (*lễ Tạ Ơn*)

+ Christmas (*Giáng Sinh*)

+ Easter (*lễ Phục Sinh*)

Ví dụ:

We usually have turkey at Thanksgiving. (*Chúng tôi thường ăn gà tây trong ngày lễ Tạ ơn.*)

8. Không dùng mạo từ với tháng, năm.

Ví dụ:

+ May is my favourite month of all. (*Tháng Năm là tháng yêu thích của tôi.*)

+ Michael has been working in that company since 2014. (*Michael đã làm việc ở công ty này từ năm 2014.*)

★ **Lưu ý:** Khi năm, thường là tròn chục, và có đuôi 's' thì chúng ta hiểu đó là trong thập niên đó và trước nó sẽ đi với the.

I last visited Sri Lanka in the 1980s. (*Lần cuối tôi ghé thăm Sri Lanka là vào những năm 1980.*)

9. Không dùng mạo từ với phương tiện giao thông đi sau 'by'.

Ví dụ:

You can travel to France by bus from here. (*Bạn có thể đi đến Pháp bằng xe buýt từ đây.*)

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN**Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions**

1. _____ dog chased the cat up the tree.
A. The B. A C. An D. Ø
2. _____ Earth is the third planet from the sun in our solar system.
A. The B. A C. An D. Ø
3. I need to buy _____ new laptop for work.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
4. She's going to _____ university in September. She's going to study there.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
5. _____ Mount Everest is the tallest mountain in the world.
A. The B. A C. An D. Ø
6. He lives in _____ apartment on the 10th floor.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
7. She's an artist, but she's also _____ skilled musician.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
8. I want to become _____ teacher when I grow up.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
9. She bought _____ bread from the bakery yesterday.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
10. I have _____ appointment with the dentist this afternoon.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
11. We visited _____ Louvre Museum during our trip to Paris.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
12. She wants to buy _____ car before _____ end of the year.
A. the/the B. a/the C. the/an D. a/Ø
13. She's allergic to _____ peanuts.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
14. He wants to become _____ astronaut when he grows up.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
15. She's wearing _____ necklace that her grandmother gave her.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
16. Coli is reading _____ book I recommended.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø

17. We went to _____ Italian restaurant for dinner last night.
A. the B. a C. an D. ∅
18. They're planning to buy _____ house in the suburbs."
A. the B. a C. an D. ∅
19. He's learning to play _____ guitar.
A. the B. a C. an D. ∅
20. He was sent to _____ prison for shoplifting. Do you want to go to prison to see him?
A. the/the B. ∅/the C. the/∅ D. a/the
21. Jennie is studying _____ Portuguese this semester.
A. the B. a C. an D. ∅
22. Dong Nai River is _____ longest river in Southeast Asia.
A. The/the B. A/the C. ∅/the D. The/∅
- 23.: Please close _____ door.
A. the B. a C. an D. ∅
24. My daughter is learning to play violin at _____ school.
A. the/a B. a/a C. the/∅ D. ∅/∅
25. My mom usually travels to work by _____ train.
A. the B. a C. an D. ∅
26. We might be able to catch _____ last train if we hurried.
A. the B. a C. an D. ∅
27. Levi worked as _____ photographer in 2000s.
A. the/the B. a/∅ C. the/∅ D. a/the
28. _____ moon affects the movement of the tide.
A. A B. The C. An D. ∅
29. _____ internet has become a vital part of our daily lives.
A. The B. A C. An D. ∅
30. _____ elephants, _____ largest land mammal, is known for its distinctive long trunk and large ears.
A. The/the B. An/∅ C. An/the D. ∅/the
31. I need to buy _____ new pair of shoes because my old ones are worn out.
A. the B. a C. an D. ∅
32. He lives in _____ apartment on _____ fifth floor of the building.
A. the/a B. an/the C. an/a D. the/the
33. He wants to buy _____ new car with _____ advanced safety features.
A. a/an B. the/an C. a/∅ D. the/an
34. He's _____ honest man; you can always trust what he says.

- A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
35. _____ pizza he ordered for lunch is from _____ Italian restaurant down the street.
A. The/an B. The/the C. A/the D. A/an
36. Vong, _____ small village in Hanoi, is famous for a specialty food: com.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
37. Can you lend me _____ book you borrowed from _____ library last week?
A. the/the B. a/a C. the/a D. a/the
38. My parents say _____ students of our age need to sleep at least 8 hours a day.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
39. _____ earliest fish and chip shop was opened in London in 1985.
A. The/the B. The/Ø C. An/the D. An/Ø
40. We rode _____ jeep to _____ top of the mountain.
A. an/the B. a/Ø C. a/the D. the/Ø
41. _____ children in the past played _____ lot of traditional outdoor games such as hide-and-seek, tug of war, and marbles.
A. The/a B. a/a C. Ø/a D. Ø/the
42. Jake loves having adventurous life.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
43. Our train arrives in Ha Noi at four o'clock in afternoon.
A. the/the B. Ø/an C. Ø/the D. the/Ø
44. Benjamin is _____ Filipino. He comes from _____ Philippines.
A. Ø/a B. the/the C. a/the D. a/Ø
45. I would like to live by _____ sea.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
46. Mrs. Anderson went to _____ school to meet her daughter's teacher.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
47. _____ disabled are supported by many young volunteers.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
48. Did _____ police find _____ person who stole your bicycle?
A. the/the B. a/the C. a/Ø D. Ø/a
49. Applying to _____ university includes many steps.
A. the B. a C. an D. Ø
50. _____ songs which are played by this band on _____ radio are very popular with teenagers.
A. 0/a B. the/Ø C. the/the D. Ø/the

Exercise 2. Fill in the blank with one suitable article (a, an or the) or Ø.

1. Come to _____ table everybody - dinner's ready.

2. He lived in _____ room with two chairs, _____ bed and _____ table.
3. London used to be _____ financial capital of the world.
4. You can travel across _____ European countries by _____ train.
5. _____ lion is _____ member of the cat family.
6. Peter tried to park his car but _____ space wasn't big enough.
7. It is _____ best film I have ever watched.
8. We've got _____ aunt living in Australia.
9. The world changed rapidly after the invention of _____ phone.
10. I read _____ interesting piece of information in the newspaper.
11. Hurry up, or we'll miss _____ train.
12. The sun rises in _____ east.
13. We crossed _____ Red Ocean on our cruise.
14. Lima is _____ capital of Peru.
15. Aman in _____ uniform stopped us entering.
16. He was killed in _____ accident at the age of 21.
17. only trouble with this café is that _____ service is so slow.
18. The magazine is aimed at _____ teenagers.
19. My baby usually sleeps in _____ evening.
20. Did you have _____ great trip? - Yes, it was _____ best trip I've ever had.

Exercise 3. Fill in the blank in the below paragraphs with a, an, the or Ø.

Paragraph 1

I've lived in (1) _____ London nearly all my life. I love it, but I don't like very crowded, noisy places. I enjoy spending time in the big parks. I love (2) _____ city in April when they are full of flowers. I have (3) _____ café in London. I opened it two years ago. I travel to work by (4) _____ train. It takes one hour, but I spend (5) _____ time reading. And I love reading!

Paragraph 2

Alex spends about five hours (1) _____ week playing computer games. His parents don't mind because they know it's less time than some teenagers spend on (2) _____ computers. He's got all kinds of games, but the ones he likes most are those where you learn things. He's got (3) _____ brilliant game called 'History Ship'. It shows you what life was like on sailing ships hundreds of years ago and it's (4) _____ interesting game to play. There's another game he'd like to get called 'Space Journey'. It's quite expensive, but he thinks he'll have enough money for it soon. (5) _____ only thing is that he can't play games at night.

Paragraph 3

The invention with the biggest impact was probably the television. It was invented by (1) _____ Scottish man, John Loggie Baird. (2) _____ first televised pictures were sent over a short distance in

1924, and his invention was formally demonstrated at the Royal Institute two years later. (3) _____ pictures on the screen were not clear, but the viewers could see that they were human faces, and they could see their eyes opening and closing. In (4) _____ 1928, images were sent from Britain to (5) _____ USA, and later, to a ship 1,500 miles out to sea. In the same year, the first color images were sent.

Exercise 4. Fill in the blank with one suitable article (a, an or the) or 0.

1. No one could answer _____ question that our teacher had told US to do.
2. There's been _____ accident - dial 999 and ask for _____ ambulance.
3. Quang Linh Vlog is now working in _____ Africa.
4. Lucy has been _____ nurse all her life. She has spent her life caring for _____ sick.
5. Karina once said she was on _____ next level.
6. Her _____ last film was shot on location in _____ south of Viet Nam.
7. Since _____ volcano last erupted, many houses have been built in _____ dangerous position on its slopes.
8. Diane's house is on _____ Cherry Street.
9. That was _____ excellent meal!
10. I just bought _____ new shirt and some new shoes. _____ shirt was pretty expensive, but _____ shoes weren't.
11. _____ panda is becoming an increasingly rare animal.
12. George usually plays _____ badminton at _____ weekends.
13. My husband dresses the children while I make _____ breakfast.
14. _____ youngest boys are so close in age they look like twins.
15. I did meet him once and it was _____ experience I shall never forget.
16. A tour of Australia is _____ once-in-a-lifetime experience.
17. They do _____ range of skin-care products.
18. We spend \$80 to pay for _____ groceries each month.
19. Maya is drinking _____ glass of orange juice.
20. There are billions of stars in _____ space.

Topic 3

LIFE – PAST AND PRESENT

1. TỔNG HỢP TỪ VỰNG CẦN NHỚ

STT	Từ	Từ loại	Nghĩa
1	advanced technology	phr	<i>công nghệ cao</i>
2	affordable	adj	<i>Hợp lí (giá cả)</i>
3	ancestor	n	<i>tổ tiên</i>
4	ancient	adj	<i>cổ xưa</i>
5	anniversary	n	<i>lễ kỉ niệm</i>
6	appear	v	<i>xuất hiện</i>
	>< disappear	v	<i>>< biến mất</i>
7	attempt	n	<i>cố gắng, nỗ lực</i>
8	breadwinner	n	<i>người trụ cột gia đình</i>
9	carrier pigeon	np	<i>bồ câu đưa thư</i>
10	castle	n	<i>lâu đài</i>
11	casual	adj	<i>thông thường</i>
12	celebrate	v	<i>ăn mừng</i>
	celebration	n	<i>lễ ăn mừng</i>
13	clay pot	np	<i>nồi đất</i>
14	communal house	np	<i>đình/ nhà rông</i>
15	community	n	<i>cộng đồng</i>
16	complex	adj	<i>phức tạp</i>
	complex	n	<i>khu phức hợp</i>
17	connect	v	<i>kết nối</i>
	connection	n	<i>sự kết nối</i>
18	contribute	v	<i>đóng góp</i>
	contribution	n	<i>sự đóng góp</i>
19	cottage	n	<i>nhà tranh</i>
20	cuisine	n	<i>cách chế biến</i>
21	culture	n	<i>văn hóa</i>
	cultural	adj	<i>(liên quan) văn hóa</i>
22	custom	n	<i>phong tục</i>
23	decorate	v	<i>trang trí</i>
	decorative	adj	<i>được trang hoàng, đẹp</i>

	decoration	n	sự trang trí
24	deliver	v	phân phát
25	duty	n	bổn phận
26	economic growth	phr	phát triển kinh tế
27	effort	n	nỗ lực
28	extended family	phr	gia đình nhiều (>3) thế hệ
	nuclear family	phr	gia đình hai thế hệ
29	face-to-face	adj	mặt đối mặt
30	folk	n	dân gian
31	fortune	n	may mắn
32	generation	n	thế hệ
33	glutinous rice	np	gạo nếp
	= sticky rice	np	gạo nếp
34	gratitude	n	lòng biết ơn
35	heritage	n	di sản
36	history	n	lịch sử
	historic	adj	quan trọng trong lịch sử (thuộc về) lịch sử
	historical	adj	về) lịch sử
	historian	n	nhà sử học
37	depend	v	phụ thuộc
	dependent	adj	(tính) phụ thuộc
	>< independent	adj	>< (tính) độc lập
	dependence	n	sự phụ thuộc
	>< independence	n	>< sự độc lập
38	infrastructure	n	cơ sở hạ tầng
39	ingredient	n	thành phần (đồ ăn)
40	living condition	phr	điều kiện sống
41	magnificent	adj	lộng lẫy, tráng lệ
42	make a living	phr	kiếm sống
43	marry	v	kết hôn
	marriage	n	hôn nhân
44	monument	n	tượng đài
45	narrow	adj	hẹp
46	national identity	np	bản sắc dân tộc
47	nephew	n	cháu trai (của cô, chú, bác)

	niece	n	cháu gái (của cô, chú, bác)
48	observe	v	quan sát
	observation	n	sự quan sát
49	occasion	n	dịp
50	occupy	v	chiếm
51	opportunity	n	cơ hội
52	overcome	v	vượt qua
53	pagoda	n	chùa
54	promote	v	thúc đẩy/ quảng bá
	promotion	n	sự thúc đẩy
55	raise children	phr	nuôi nấng con cái
56	relative	n	họ hàng
57	relic	n	di tích
58	religion	n	tôn giáo
	religious	adj	(liên quan) tôn giáo
59	remain	v	còn lại/giữ lại
60	represent	v	đại diện
61	respect	v	tôn trọng
62	responsible	adj	có trách nhiệm
	responsibility	n	trách nhiệm
63	ritual	n	nghi lễ
64	secret	n	bí mật
65	single	adj	độc thân
66	skyscraper	n	nhà chọc trời
67	temple	n	đền
68	tradition	n	truyền thống
	traditional	adj	(thuộc về) truyền thống
69	transportation	n	vận tải, chuyên chở
70	value	n	giá trị
71	vendor	n	người bán hàng rong
72	windmill	n	cối xay gió
73	witness	v	chứng kiến
74	worship	v	thờ cúng

➤ Phân biệt pagoda, temple và communal house

+ pagoda: chùa là nơi thờ tự của Phật giáo

+ temple: đền là nơi thờ người có công, vua chúa hoặc Thánh, Thần,...

+ communal house: đình là nơi thờ người lập nên làng, xã và là nơi họp mặt và tổ chức các dịp lễ trong làng, xã

2. TỔNG HỢP CẤU TRÚC CẦN NHỚ

STT	Cụm	Nghĩa
1	similar to >< different from	<i>giống với >< khác với</i>
2	be afraid of + sth/V-ing	<i>lo sợ về</i>
3	decide to V = make a decision on V-ing	<i>quyết định làm gì</i>
4	take pride in sb/sth = be proud of sb/sth	<i>tự hào về ai/điều gì</i>
5	pass (sth) down	<i>truyền lại (cái gì)</i>
6	take part in = join in = participate in	<i>tham gia vào</i>
7	like/enjoy + V-ing = be interested in + V-ing = be keen on + V-ing = be fond of + V-ing	<i>thích làm gì</i>
8	be/keep associated with sth	<i>kết hợp với</i>
9	show sb's gratitude/respect to sb	<i>bày tỏ lòng biết ơn của ai với ai</i>
10	contribute to sth = make a contribution to sth	<i>đóng góp cho</i>

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Fill in each blank with a suitable word.

Paragraph 1:

<i>responsibility</i>	<i>cottages</i>	<i>values</i>
<i>traditions</i>	<i>generation</i>	<i>extended family</i>

In the past, a(n) (1) _____ usually had three generations: grandparents, parents, and children. Families often lived together in cozy (2) _____, where beautiful (3) _____ were passed down from one (4) _____ to the next. It was a time when everyone felt connected, sharing experiences and lessons with each other. Raising children was a shared (5) _____. They taught children to show gratitude to their ancestors. Each member contributed to the culture of the community, forming the family (6) _____. The close-knit bonds within the family nurtured a strong sense of belonging.

Paragraph 2:

<i>communal</i>	<i>connection</i>	<i>values</i>
<i>ancestors</i>	<i>folk</i>	<i>breadwinner</i>

Life in the past was filled with traditions that we still cherish today. People back then enjoyed simple moments, often listening to (1) _____ songs. These songs were special because they reminded everyone of our (2) _____ and their strength. In villages, there was a big

building called the (3) _____ house where everyone gathered to share stories and say thank you for what they had. This brought everyone closer, creating a strong sense of (4) _____. People were always thankful for the person who worked hard to provide for the family, known as the (5) _____. Even though times have changed, we still remember these old days and the (6) _____ they taught us.

Paragraph 3:

<i>occasions</i>	<i>contribution</i>	<i>religion</i>
<i>cultural</i>	<i>celebrations</i>	<i>customs</i>

Life, both in the past and present, has been marked by important (1) _____ where people come together to celebrate. One such event is rooted in (2) _____, representing the spiritual beliefs of a community. In the past, these (3) _____ were grand events, showcasing the (4) _____ and traditions of the time. Everyone played a part, making their own (5) _____ to the festivities. Today, while the way we celebrate may have changed, the significance remains. These occasions still bring people together, fostering a sense of unity and belonging. Whether in the past or present, these celebrations are a vital part of our (6) _____ identity, connecting us to our heritage and values.

Exercise 2. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, c or D) for each of following questions.

- In some cities, it's difficult to find _____ housing options for low- income families.
A. expensive B. cozy C. affordable D. modern
- In New York, you can often see tall _____ reaching high into the sky.
A. hills B. trees C. buildings D. skyscrapers
- On special _____, families often gather to celebrate and share memorable moments together.
A. events B. places C. times D. occasions
- In ancient societies, elders often had the _____ of passing down knowledge and traditions to younger generations.
A. right B. responsibility C. job D. work
- The tour guide led us through the _____ monument of the city, sharing stories of its past.
A. historian B. historic C. history D. histories
- The local community takes pride in preserving its cultural _____, including traditional crafts, music, and architecture.
A. customs B. history C. heritage D. folklore
- The ancient relics have been carefully _____ to maintain their original beauty.
A. renovated B. destroyed C. preserved D. ignored
- Sarah felt _____ of her achievements after completing her master's degree.
A. sad B. proud C. tired D. angry
- During the festival, participants wear _____ costumes and perform rituals passed down through

generations.

A. affordable B. historic C. traditional D. expensive

10. On New Year's Eve, people come together for a happy _____ filled with music, fireworks, and dancing.

A. anniversary B. ceremony C. celebration D. occasion

11. Visiting museums is a great way to learn about the _____ heritage of different regions.

A. natural B. cultural C. historical D. nation

12. In Paris, visitors want to see iconic _____ such as the Eiffel Tower and the Arc de Triomphe.

A. skyscrapers B. monuments C. museums D. galleries

13. In many cultures, _____ such as respect, kindness, and honesty are considered important aspects of family life.

A. beliefs B. values C. traditions D. customs

14. In a _____ family structure, parents and their children live together in the same household.

A. traditional B. nuclear C. extended D. modern

15. When traveling to different countries, many people enjoy experiencing the local _____ to explore new flavors and dishes.

A. cultures B. landmarks C. cuisines D. languages

16. Asian people sometimes perform traditional _____ during important festivals to show gratitude to their ancestors and gods.

A. dances B. food C. rituals D. games

17. In many cultures, _____ plays a central role in shaping beliefs, values, and traditions.

A. historian B. religion C. geography D. science

18. _____ is commonly associated with Eastern religious practices and often features multiple tiers and a pointed roof.

A. Cottage B. Warehouse C. Pagoda D. Skyscraper

19. Showing _____ can lead to stronger social connections and increased happiness.

A. gratitude B. excitement C. confusion D. observation

20. Parenting involves a range of responsibilities, including providing love, support, and guidance to _____ a child.

A. maintain B. teach C. raise D. connect

21. Many folk dances have their origins in ancient _____.

A. rituals B. secrets C. anniversary D. ingredients

22. What was Marie Curie's _____ to the field of science?

A. curiosity B. decision C. experiment D. contribution

23. The key factor when considering renewable energy sources for widespread use is the energy must be both environmentally friendly and _____.

- A. costly B. expensive C. affordable D. hospitable

24. The concept of _____ identity plays a crucial role in shaping a country's sense of unity and belonging.

- A. global B. individual C. national D. commercial

25. In some cultures, a _____ is a gathering place for members of a community to take part in various activities together.

- A. pagoda B. communal house
C. shopping mall D. temple

26. The pyramids of Egypt were built by _____ people.

- A. ancient B. modern C. present D. advanced

27. Many scientists have made _____ to human development through their discoveries and inventions.

- A. mistakes B. fortune C. decisions D. contributions

28. A(n) _____ person can make their own decisions without being influenced by others.

- A. independent B. dependent C. selfish D. single

29. As citizens of society, we should be _____ for protecting our cultural heritage.

- A. decorative B. responsible C. caring D. care

30. Visitors to Philadelphia often visit Independence Hall, a national _____ site.

- A. historical B. history C. historic D. histories

Exercise 3. Rewrite the following sentences by using the word in the brackets.

1. They took pride in their children without any reasons. (PROUD)

→

2. She never participates in any of our discussions. (TAKE)

→

3. Many people in Britain are fond of gardening. (KEEN)

→

4. The teacher is so proud of Jean's final grade. (PRIDE)

→

5. People enjoyed sharing family values with children. (INTERESTED)

→

6. Regular exercise can contribute to overall physical health and well-being. (MAKE)

→

7. After thinking carefully, she decided to follow a career in medicine. (MADE)

→

8. His taste in music is different from mine. (SIMILAR)

→

Exercise 4. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

1. _____ studied the events and figures of the past. (HISTORY)
2. We celebrate _____ festivals to honor our national heroes. (CULTURE)
3. People from diverse backgrounds witness many _____ during times of celebration. (TRADITION)
4. The event was _____, marking an important moment in our nation's history. (HISTORY)
5. The town's annual _____ attracts visitors from neighboring cities. (CELEBRATE)
6. His _____ to the team's success was very significant. (CONTRIBUTE)
7. The bridge played a crucial role in _____ the two communities (CONNECT)
8. During the family reunion, I met up with _____ I hadn't seen in years. (RELATE)

Exercise 5. Write one suitable word in each gap.

Families often lived in close-knit communities many years ago, where they would pass their traditions and experiences (1) _____ from generation to generation. Within these communities, the (2) _____ families played a central role, with (3) _____ of members actively taking (4) _____ in various activities. These activities were a way of not only preserving cultural heritage but also taking (5) _____ in our family values.

Exercise 6. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct arrangement of the sentences to make a meaningful paragraph/letter for the following questions.

1.
 - a. Secondly, people often had strong connections with their surroundings and relied on local resources to meet life's demands.
 - b. Life in the past was often simpler and more challenging compared to today.

- c. Without modem technology, life revolved around local customs and routines.
 - d. Therefore, people in the past seem to be more close knit to each other.
 - e. To start with, people relied heavily on traditional skills for daily tasks, such as farming and crafting.
- A. b-e-a-c-d B. b-d-e-a-c C. b-e-d-a-c D. b-e-c-a-d

2.

- a. People often sent letters by post.
 - b. When you think of communication 100 years ago, the first thing that comes to mind is speaking face-to-face.
 - c. However, there were other ways to communicate, too.
 - d. These ways of communication delivered messages across long distances, even hundred of kilometers.
 - e. They also used the telephone, the telegraph machine and carrier pigeons.
- A. b-e-c-a-d B. b-c-a-e-d C. b-c-e-a-d D. b-a-e-c-d

3.

- a. Without modem machines, farming was quite hard.
 - b. First of all, people lived in small villages where everyone knew each other.
 - c. In summary, they had fewer comforts, they found happiness in their close relationships and simple routines.
 - d. Life in the past was very different from today.
 - e. Second, they worked hard every day, growing their own food and making things by hand.
 - f. Lastly, people depended on each other and spent a lot of time together, helping one another and sharing stories.
- A. d-b-e-a-f-c B. b-d-b-a-e-c-f C. a-b-d-e-f-c D. d-b-e-a-c-f

4.

- a. We use phones and computers every day, and information is always at our fingertips.
 - b. Besides, I go to school by bus every day and it's very convenient. What about your city?
 - c. Dear Peter, I want to you about the life in the city that I am living.
 - d. Write to me soon, Henry
 - e. While these electronic devices can make life easier, it can also be overwhelming.
 - f. Modern life in this city is full of new technology and fast changes.
- A. c-e-f-a-b-d B. c-f-b-e-a-d C. c-f-a-e-b-d D. c-f-e-a-b-d

5.

- a. I miss the old experiences.
- b. And the way we used to entertain ourselves—board games and outdoor play.
- c. Right, Jim! Back then, you had to wait to see your pictures, and now it's instant with digital cameras.

d. Hey Jordan, I was looking through old photo albums and realized how different everything used to be.

f. Me too, there's something special about that. But I guess we have to adapt to new modern life.

g. Now it's all about screens and streaming services. It's convenient but sometimes feels less engaging.

A. d-f-c-a-e-b B. d-c-a-b-e-f C. d-c-a-b-f-e D. d-c-b-f-a-e

Chuyên đề VII THÌ VÀ SỰ PHỐI HỢP THÌ

TENSES AND SEQUENCE OF TENSES

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. CÁC THÌ TRỌNG TÂM

1. Thì hiện tại đơn

a. Cách dùng

➤ Diễn tả thói quen, hành động thường xuyên xảy ra

Ví dụ: Lucy goes fishing every weekend. (*Lucy đi câu cá mỗi cuối tuần.*)

➤ Diễn tả chân lí, sự thật hiển nhiên

Ví dụ: The moon moves around the earth. (*Mặt trăng quay xung quanh Trái Đất.*)

➤ Nói về lịch trình, bảng biểu

Ví dụ: The train to Tokyo leaves at 10:30. (*Chuyến tàu tới Tokyo rời đi lúc 10:30.*)

➤ Lời chỉ dẫn, hướng dẫn

Ví dụ: You take the train into the city centre and then you take a number five bus. (*Bạn bắt xe buýt vào trung tâm thành phố và rồi đón xe buýt số 5.*)

b. Cấu trúc

	Động từ to be	Động từ thường
Cấu trúc	I + am (not) He/she/it + is (not) You/we/they + are (not) * is not = isn't are not = aren't	Khẳng định: S + V(inf/s/es) Phủ định S + don't/doesn't + V-inf Nghi vấn Do/Does + S + V-inf?
Ví dụ	He is a doctor (<i>Anh ấy là một bác sĩ.</i>)	Kylie doesn't play the piano. (<i>Kylie không chơi piano.</i>)

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

➤ Trạng từ chỉ tần suất: always, usually, often, sometimes, rarely, barely, seldom, never

➤ every day/week/month

➤ once/twice/ three times,... a week/month

2. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn

a. Cách dùng**➤ Diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói**

Ví dụ: I am reading my new book. (*Tôi đang đọc quyển sách mới của mình.*)

➤ Nói về hành động xảy ra trong tương lai gần (có kế hoạch, lịch trình)

Ví dụ: We are going camping at Yen So park this weekend. (*Chúng tôi sẽ đi cắm trại ở công viên Yên Sở vào cuối tuần này.*)

➤ Dùng để phàn nàn về một hành động, hoặc sự việc lặp lại nhiều khiến người khác khó chịu (thường đi với always)

Ví dụ: My sister is always borrowing my pen without asking. (*Chị tôi lúc nào cũng mượn bút của tôi mà không xin phép.*)

➤ Diễn tả sự thay đổi thói quen

Ví dụ: Jane usually goes to school by bike, but today she is going to school by car. (*Jane hay đi học bằng xe đạp, nhưng hôm nay cô ấy đi xe hơi.*)

b. Cấu trúc

	Động từ
Cấu trúc	Khẳng định: S + am/is/are + V-ing Phủ định: S + am/is/are + not + V-ing Nghi vấn: Am/is/are + S + V-ing?
Ví dụ	I am studying Physics now. (<i>Tôi đang học Vật lí.</i>) We are not playing football. (<i>Chúng tôi đang không chơi đá bóng.</i>) Is he travelling to Da Lat? (<i>Anh ấy sẽ đi Đà Lạt chứ?</i>)

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết**➤ now, right now, at the moment, at present: ngay bây giờ, ngay hiện tại****➤ Câu mệnh lệnh ngắn (thường có dấu chấm than! ở cuối):**

+ Look! (*nhìn kìa!*)

+ Watch out! = Look out! (*coi chừng!*)

+ Be careful! (*cẩn thận!*)

+ Listen! (*nghe này!*)

+ Keep silent! (*giữ im lặng!*)

3. Thì quá khứ đơn**a. Cách dùng****➤ Diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra và chấm dứt trong quá khứ, không liên quan tới hiện tại.**

Ví dụ: They bought a brand-new car yesterday. (*Họ đã mua một cái xe mới toanh ngày hôm qua.*)

➤ Diễn tả các hành động xảy ra liên tiếp trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: He opened the door, sat on the chair and turned on the TV. (*Anh ta mở cửa, ngồi xuống ghế và bật TV lên.*)

b. Cấu trúc

	Động từ to be	Động từ thường
Cấu trúc	I/he/she/it + was (not) You/we/they + were (not) * was not = wasn't were not = weren't	- Khẳng định: S + V (ed/cột 2) - Phủ định S + didn't + V-inf - Nghi vấn Did + S + V-inf? *did not = didn't
Ví dụ	They were very rich. (Họ đã từng rất giàu có.)	The meal began with soup. (Bữa ăn bắt đầu với món súp.) She didn't phone me. (Cô ấy đã không gọi cho tôi.) Did you feel afraid? (Bạn có cảm thấy sợ không?)

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

- yesterday (ngày hôm qua), in the past (trong quá khứ) hoặc các khoảng thời gian đã qua (this morning, today, ...)
- last + weel/month/year/summer, ...
- thời gian + ago (long time ago, 2 days ago, 3 years ago, ...)
- mốc thời gian trong quá khứ (in 2014, in 19th century, ...)

4. Thì tương lai đơn**Cách dùng****➤ Diễn tả sự việc có thể xảy ra trong tương lai**

Ví dụ: The new stadium will be the biggest in Asia. (Sân vận động mới sẽ là cái to nhất ở Châu Á.)

➤ Dự đoán

Ví dụ: I think it will rain this afternoon. (Tôi nghĩ sẽ có mưa chiều nay.)

➤ Quyết định tại thời điểm nói

Ví dụ: I'll go to Thailand this summer. (Tôi sẽ đến Thái Lan mùa hè này.)

➤ Lời đề nghị

Ví dụ: We will help you lift that heavy box. (Tôi sẽ giúp bạn nâng cái hộp nặng đó.)

➤ Lưu ý: Với lời đề nghị dạng câu hỏi, ta dùng 'shall' cho ngôi thứ nhất (we, I)

Ví dụ: Shall I drive you home? (Tôi đưa bạn về nhà chứ?)

b Cấu trúc

	Động từ to be	Động từ thường
--	----------------------	-----------------------

Cấu trúc	S + will (not) be ... * will not = won't	- Khẳng định: S + will + V-inf - Phủ định: S + will (not) + V-inf - Nghi vấn: Will + S + V-inf?
Ví dụ	Vietnam will be a developed country. (<i>Việt Nam sẽ trở thành một quốc gia phát triển.</i>)	I will finish the project next week. (<i>Tôi sẽ hoàn thành dự án này vào tuần tới.</i>) Louis won't meet Liam again. (<i>Louis sẽ không gặp Liam nữa.</i>) Will you go to the party? (<i>Bạn sẽ đến bữa tiệc chứ?</i>)

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

- tomorrow (*ngày mai*), in the future (*trong tương lai*)
- next day/week/month/year/summer,...
- in + thời gian (*in 5 minutes, in 2 days, ...*)

5. Thì tương lai gần

Tương lai gần được dùng để diễn tả dự định đã được lên kế hoạch và có tính toán trong tương lai và dự đoán về tương lai dựa trên căn cứ ở hiện tại.

a. Cấu trúc

be + going to + V-inf

Ví dụ:

- + We are going to go camping this weekend. (*Chúng ta sẽ đi cắm trại cuối tuần này - dự định đã lên kế hoạch*)
- + It's going to rain. The sky looks so dark. (*Trời sẽ mưa đấy. Trời trông âm u quá - dự đoán dựa trên căn cứ.*)

6. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành

a. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ và kéo dài đến thời điểm hiện tại, có thể tiếp diễn trong tương lai,

Ví dụ: Ms. White has been a teacher for 4 years. (*Cô White đã làm giáo viên được 4 năm rồi.*)

- Diễn tả hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ không đề cập đến thời gian xảy ra.

Ví dụ: I have been to Paris. (*Tôi đã đi Paris rồi.*)

- Diễn tả hành động trong quá khứ để lại dấu hiệu hoặc kết quả ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: Where have you been, Perry? Your clothes look dirty. (*Bạn đã đi đâu Perry, quần áo bạn trông bẩn quá.*)

- Diễn tả trải nghiệm (thường đi với ever, never)

Ví dụ: We have never eaten durian. (*Chúng tôi chưa ăn sầu riêng bao giờ.*)

b. Cấu trúc

	Động từ to be	Động từ thường
Cấu trúc	S + have/has (not) + been ... * have not = haven't has not = hasn't	- Khẳng định: S + have/has + V (ed/cột 3) - Phủ định: S + have/has (not) + V (ed/cột 3) - Nghi vấn: Have/has + S + V (ed/cột 3)?
Ví dụ	The postman hasn't been yet. (<i>Người đưa thư vẫn chưa tới.</i>)	She has posted a picture. (<i>Cô ấy đã đăng một tấm ảnh.</i>) Have you visited them? (<i>Bạn đã ghé thăm họ chưa?</i>)

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

- For + khoảng thời gian (*for 7 years - được 7 năm*)
- Since + mốc thời gian (*since 2014 - từ năm 2014*)
- yet (câu phủ định, câu hỏi)
- just (vừa mới), already (xong rồi), lately, recently (gần đây), so far (cho đến nay)
- ever, never

7. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn

a. Cách dùng

Nói về hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ và kéo dài đến hiện tại có thể tiếp tục trong tương lai

Ví dụ: Lily has been practising yoga for 2 hours. (*Lily đã tập yoga được 2 tiếng rồi.*)

b. Cấu trúc

	Động từ
Cấu trúc	- Khẳng định: S + have/has + been + V-ing - Phủ định: S + have/has (not) + been + V-ing S + have/has (not) + been + V-ing - Nghi vấn: Have/has + s + been V-ing? * have not = haven't has not = hasn't
Ví dụ	They have been studying all day. (<i>Họ đã học cả ngày rồi.</i>) How long has the cat been licking his fur? (<i>Con mèo đã liếm lông được bao lâu rồi?</i>)

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

- all day/week (cả ngày/tuần)
- for, since

	Phân biệt thì hiện tại hoàn thành & hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn	
	Hiện tại hoàn thành	Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn
Giống nhau	➤ Nói về hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ kéo dài tới hiện tại	
Khác nhau	➤ Sự việc kéo dài mang tính ổn định ➤ Nhấn mạnh kết quả	➤ Sự việc tạm thời (thường với thời gian ngắn) ➤ Nhấn mạnh quá trình liên tục

8. Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn

a. Cách dùng

➤ Diễn tả hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ tại một thời điểm cụ thể

Ví dụ: Chloe was having dinner at 8 yesterday. (*Chloe đã đang ăn cơm lúc 8 giờ hôm qua.*)

➤ Diễn tả các hành động xảy ra song song trong quá khứ (thường đi với liên từ while).

Ví dụ: While my mom was cooking, my dad was reading newspapers. (*Trong khi mẹ tôi đang nấu ăn, bố tôi đang đọc báo.*)

➤ Dùng để phàn nàn nói về một hành động, hoặc sự việc lặp lại nhiều trong quá khứ khiến người khác khó chịu, (thường đi với always).

Ví dụ: She was always coming late. (*Cô ấy đã từng lúc nào cũng đi muộn.*)

b. Cấu trúc

	Động từ
Cấu trúc	Khẳng định: S + was/were + V-ing Phủ định: S + was/were + not + V-ing Nghi vấn: Was/were + S + V-ing?
Ví dụ	It was eight o'clock. I was writing a letter. (<i>Đó là lúc tám giờ. Tôi đã đang viết thư.</i>)

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

➤ giờ/thời điểm + thời gian trong quá khứ (*at 5 am yesterday*)

➤ at this/that time, at that moment + thời gian trong quá khứ (*at this time last week - vào tầm này tuần trước*)

9. Thì quá khứ hoàn thành

a. Cách dùng

➤ Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước một hành động hoặc một thời điểm khác trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: After we had finished the project, Linda submitted it to our teacher. (*Sau khi chúng tôi hoàn thành dự án, Linda đã nộp nó cho giáo viên.*)

b. Cấu trúc

	Động từ
Cấu trúc	Khẳng định: S + had + V (ed/cột 3) Phủ định: S + had (not) + V (ed/cột 3) Nghi vấn: Had + S + V (ed/cột 3)?

Ví dụ	I had gone out when my grandparents came. (Tôi đã đi ra ngoài khi ông bà đến.)
--------------	--

c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

➤ before/after (trước/sau), when (khi), until (cho đến khi), as soon as (ngay sau khi)

➤ by the time + Quá khứ đơn (vào lúc)

II. CÁC THÌ CÒN LẠI (NÂNG CAO)

Thì	Cách dùng	Cấu trúc	Dấu hiệu nhận biết
10. Thì tương lai hoàn thành	Nói về một hành động hoàn thành trước một hành động hoặc một mốc thời gian trong tương lai	(+, -) S + will (not) + have + P2 (?) Will + S + have + P2?	by + thời gian trong tương lai by the time + hiện tại đơn
11. Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn	Nói về một hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ và đến thời điểm đó vẫn còn tiếp diễn	(+, -) S + had (not) been + V-ing (?) Had + S + been + V-ing?	by + thời gian quá khứ by the time + quá khứ đơn
12. Thì tương lai tiếp diễn	Nói về một hành động sẽ xảy ra tại một thời điểm cụ thể trong tương lai	(+, -) S + will (not) be + V-ing (?) Will + S + be V-ing?	giờ/thời điểm + thời gian trong tương lai at this/that time + thời gian trong tương lai
13. Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn	Nói về một hành động xảy ra và vẫn đang tiếp diễn tại một thời điểm trong tương lai	(+, -) s + will (not) have been + V-ing (?) Will + s + have been + V-ing?	by then (đến lúc đó) by the time by + thời gian

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Điền thì thích hợp của động từ vào các câu sau

Tra ID Đề [5097] - Tra ID Video [5098]

Question 1 [572875]: We _____ (not finish) our dinner yet.

Question 2 [572876]: They _____ (play) soccer in the garden at the moment.

Question 3 [572877]: Cats _____ (like) to chase mice.

Question 4 [572878]: I think he _____ (arrive) around 8 o'clock.

Question 5 [572879]: By the time I arrived, they _____ (leave) the party.

Question 6 [572880]: She _____ (call) me last night but I _____ (not answer).

Question 7 [572881]: They _____ (live) in that house for ten years before they moved.

Question 8 [572882]: Mia usually _____ (not cook) dinner for her family on Sundays.

Question 9 [572883]: Yesterday, they _____ (visit) the museum downtown.

Question 10 [572884]: The bus _____ (come) at 7:00 AM sharp every weekday.

Question 11 [572885]: We _____ (be) to Paris several times. It's so poetic.

Question 12 [572886]: At 9 PM last night, I _____ (watch) a live sport game on TV.

Question 13 [572887]: Harry and Karl _____ (be) friends since childhood.

Question 14 [572888]: We _____ (wait) for over an hour before the bus finally arrived.

Question 15 [572889]: The team _____ (practice) hard for the upcoming tournament.

Question 16 [572890]: In 2050, George _____ (build) his own house in Ho Chi Minh City.

Question 17 [572891]: At this time yesterday, I _____ (jog) in the schoolyard.

Question 18 [572892]: When she entered the shopping mall, the store _____ (already close).

Question 19 [572893]: Where _____ (you be) two days ago?

Question 20 [572894]: Look! That man _____ (try) to open the door of your car.

Question 21 [572895]: When police _____ (come) to the scene, the robber _____ (escape).

Question 22 [572896]: _____ (you/be) on business to New York next month?

Question 23 [572897]: _____ (Howard ever /post) anything on Instagram?

Question 24 [572898]: Everything _____ (go) well now. We _____ (have) any problems so far.

Question 25 [572899]: Lucy _____ (wash) her clothes five times a week.

Exercise 2. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5099] - Tra ID Video [5100]

Question 1 [572900]: They _____ this house last week.

A. paints B. paint C. painted D. was painted

Question 2 [572901]: He _____ with his friends in an apartment since 2006.

A. have live B. lived C. has lived D. is living

Question 3 [572902]: Mr. Nghia _____ English for 25 years.

A. has taught B. taught C. has teached D. was taught

Question 4 [572903]: She promises she _____ her exams next week.

A. will pass B. is going to pass C. passes D. passed

Question 5 [572904]: While she _____ her car, I was walking past.

A. washes B. washed C. was washing D. has washed

Question 6 [572905]: When I _____ the news last night, I _____ shocked.

A. hear/was B. heard/am C. hear/am D. heard/was

Question 7 [572906]: By the time I got home yesterday, everyone _____ to bed.

A. went B. has gone C. had gone D. goes

Question 8 [572907]: Sarah _____ in the pool every morning.

A. swims B. is swimming C. has swum D. swam

Question 9 [572908]: The sun _____ in the east.

A. rises B. rise C. rising D. rose

Question 10 [572909]: We _____ in this neighborhood for five years before we moved to the city.

A. had lived B. have lived C. lived D. were living

Question 11 [572910]: She _____ at the company since she graduated from college.

A. works B. is working C. worked D. has been working

Question 12 [572911]: Liam _____ to the costumes pally. He has been waiting for it for ages.

A. will attend B. attending
C. is going to attend D. has been attending

Question 13 [572912]: When I was a child, I _____ with my friends every day after school.

A. play B. played C. was playing D. have played

Question 14 [572913]: Hein this city since he _____ a child.

A. lives/was B. has lived/was
C. lived/has been D. has been living/was

Question 15 [572914]: - We don't have any bread. - I know. I _____ some from the shop then.

A. will get B. got C. am going to get D. gotten

Question 16 [572915]: A: Can you tell me what time the takes off? B: The plane off at 6 am today according to the schedule, sir.

A. took B. takes C. take D. has taken

Question 17 [572916]: At 8 o'clock last night, I _____ my homework.

A. finish B. finished C. was finishing D. have finished

Question 18 [572917]: They _____ dinner with us tomorrow night.

A. will have B. going to have C. have D. having

Question 19 [572918]: Maria _____ her doctorate degree in two years.

A. will receive B. receiving C. receives D. received

Question 20 [572919]: They _____ a new house next spring.

A. will buy B. buys C. buying D. bought

Question 21 [572920]: _____ you _____ football on weekends?

A. Do/play B. Does/play C. Are/playing D. Playing/do

Question 22 [572921]: Be careful! A tree down.

A. fell B. felt C. is falling D. falls

Question 23 [572922]: I _____ this book for a week and still haven't finished it.

A. read B. have been reading

C. am reading

D. had read

Question 24 [572923]: She _____ a hard life, but she's always smiling.

A. has

B. had

C. had had

D. have

Question 25 [572924]: That student _____ always _____ deadlines. Her teacher is so mad at her.

A. has/been missing

B. is/missing

C. was/misssed

D. was/missing

Exercise 3. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) to indicate the underlined part that needs correction for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5101] - **Tra ID Video** [5102]

Question 1 [572154]: He breaks (A) his father's antique (B) vase in the (C) living room last night (D).

Question 2 [572155]: They have been waiting (A) for the (B) bus since (C) over an (D) hour.

Question 3 [572156]: She worked (A) here ever (B) since (C) she graduated (D) from college.

Question 4 [572157]: I didn't use to (A) go swimming when (B) I live (C) in the countryside (D).

Question 5 [572158]: We have finished (A) our homework (B) for (C) 2 hours before she (D) came.

Question 6 [572159]: She haven't finished (A) the project (B) although (C) she worked (D) all day.

Question 7 [572160]: Caroline has worn (A) her new yellow dress only once (B) since (C) she buys (D) it.

Question 8 [572161]: When he returned (A), he realized (B) that he left (C) his (D) key in the office.

Question 9 [572162]: When I lived (A) with my grandparents (B), I play (C) badminton every afternoon (D).

Question 10 [572163]: My nephew usually (A) ask (B) me for (C) help when he has (D) difficult homework.

Chuyên đề VII THÌ VÀ SỰ PHỐI HỢP THÌ (tiếp theo)

TENSES AND SEQUENCE OF TENSES

(cont)

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

III. CÁC TRƯỜNG HỢP PHỐI THÌ CƠ BẢN

★ Lưu ý: Hầu hết các trường hợp có thể thay đổi thứ tự các vế mệnh đề của câu. Khi đổi vế có liên từ về phía sau, chúng ta bỏ dấu phẩy.

1. Hành động đang xảy ra thì hành động khác xen vào

When/while + QKĐ/QKTD, QKĐ/QKTD

Trong đó:

- Hành động đang xảy ra: quá khứ tiếp diễn
- Hành động xen vào: quá khứ đơn

Ví dụ: When my mom came home, I was playing video games. (Khi mẹ về nhà, tôi đang chơi điện tử.)

2. Các hành động xảy ra song song trong quá khứ

While + QKTD, QKTD

Tất cả các hành động đều chia ở thì quá khứ tiếp diễn

Ví dụ: While Paula was eating snacks, her parents were watching TV. (Trong khi Paula đang ăn đồ ăn vặt, bố mẹ cô ấy đang xem ti vi.)

3. Hành động hoàn thành trước một hành động khác

Trong quá khứ:

After + QKHT, QKD

Before + QKD, QKHT

By the time + QKD, QKHT

Trong đó:

- Hành động hoàn thành trước: quá khứ hoàn thành
- Hành động xảy ra sau: quá khứ đơn

Ví dụ:

+ After Lola and Ann had entered the room, they started discussing the topic. (Sau khi Lola và Ann đi vào phòng, họ bắt đầu thảo luận về chủ đề đó.)

+ A suit had been sent to US before we came to the party. (Trước khi chúng tôi đến bữa tiệc, một bộ vest đã được gửi đến.)

+ By the time they arrived at the meeting, everyone had left. Vào lúc họ đến cuộc họp, mọi người đã rời đi rồi.)

Trong tương lai:

By the time + Hiện tại đơn, Tương lai hoàn thành

Trong đó:

- Hành động hoàn thành trước: tương lai hoàn thành
- Hành động xảy ra sau: hiện tại đơn

Ví dụ:

By the time the police reach the scene, the killer will have already escaped. (Vào lúc cảnh sát đến hiện trường, tên sát nhân sẽ rời đi rồi.)

4. Kết hợp và chuyển đổi giữa thì quá khứ đơn và thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

Kết hợp:

Hiện tại hoàn thành + since + Quá khứ đơn

Ví dụ:

Ms. My has been an English teacher since she graduated from university. (Cô My đã là một giáo viên tiếng Anh kể từ khi cô ấy tốt nghiệp đại học.)

Chuyển đổi:

➤ **Dạng 1:**

This is the first time + S + Hiện tại hoàn thành (khẳng định)

⇔ S + have/has + never + P2 + before

Ví dụ:

This is the first time she has seen this movie. (Đây là lần đầu tiên cô ấy xem bộ phim này.)

⇔ She has never seen this movie before. (Cô ấy chưa từng xem bộ phim này trước đây.)

➤ **Dạng 2:**

S + last + Quá khứ đơn + thời gian + ago

⇔ S + Hiện tại hoàn thành (phủ định) + for + thời gian

⇔ The last time + S + Quá khứ đơn + was + thời gian + ago

⇔ It's / It has been + thời gian + since + S + last + Quá khứ đơn

Ví dụ:

I last came back to my hometown 3 years ago. (Tôi lần cuối trở về quê là 3 năm trước.)

⇔ I haven't come back to my hometown for 3 years. (Tôi đã không về quê được 3 năm rồi.)

⇔ The last time I came back to my hometown was 3 years ago. (Lần cuối cùng tôi về quê là 3 năm trước.)

⇔ It's been 3 years since I last came back to my hometown. (Đã là 3 năm kể từ lần cuối tôi về quê.)

➤ **Dạng 3:**

S + began/started + V-ing + thời gian + ago

⇔ S + have/has + P2 + for + thời gian

Ví dụ:

Vivian started playing piano a long time ago. (Vivian đã bắt đầu chơi piano từ rất lâu rồi.)

⇔ Vivian has played piano for a long time. (*Vivian đã chơi piano được một khoảng thời gian dài rồi.*)

Dạng 4:

When did + S + V-inf?

⇔ How long have/has + S + P2?

Ví dụ:

When did you start learning English? (*Bạn đã bắt đầu học tiếng Anh từ khi nào?*)

⇔ How long have you learned English? (*Bạn đã học tiếng Anh được bao lâu rồi?*)

5. Hành động xảy ra liên tiếp

Trong quá khứ:

When: khi; As soon as: ngay sau khi

When/As soon as + Quá khứ đơn, Quá khứ đơn

Ví dụ:

+ When Luna drank that bottle of water, I started to feel thirsty. (*Khi Luna uống chai nước đó, tôi bắt đầu cảm thấy khát.*)

+ He ran away as soon as he saw the cockroach. (*Anh ấy chạy mất tiêu ngay sau khi anh ta nhìn thấy con gián.*)

Trong tương lai:

When/As soon as + Hiện tại đơn, Tương lai đơn

Ví dụ:

+ I will give you my notebook when I meet you. (*Tôi sẽ đưa bạn quyển vở của tôi khi tôi gặp bạn.*)

+ As soon as they return home, they will turn on the AC immediately. (*Ngay sau khi họ trở về nhà, họ sẽ bật điều hòa ngay lập tức.*)

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, c or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5104] - Tra ID Video [5105]

Question 1 [572925]: By the time Sarah arrived, Markh _____ is presentation.

A. already finished B. has already finished

C. had already finished D. already had finished

Question 2 [572926]: John _____ to the party yesterday because he _____ an important meeting early this morning.

A. didn't go / has B. hasn't gone / has C. didn't go / had D. hasn't gone / had

Question 3 [572927]: While her mom _____, she was cleaning her room.

A. was cooked B. cooked C. was cooking D. has cook

Question 4 [572928]: This is the first time Tina _____ *Bun bo Hue*.

A. has tried ever B. have ever tried C. has ever tried D. ever has tried

Question 5 [572929]: Justin _____ his job last month and since then he _____ out of work.

A. lost/was B. has lost/was C. lost/has been D. has lost/has been

Question 6 [572930]: I _____ here until you _____ back.

A. stay/come B. will stay/come C. stayed/came D. stayed/had come

Question 7 [572931]: The sun was shining when I _____ up this morning.

A. get B. got C. was getting D. gotten

Question 8 [572932]: By the age of 34, Jim _____ through 15 countries in Asia. Now he is 45 already.

A. have been B. had been C. was D. was being

Question 9 [572933]: When I last saw her, she _____ in Ho Chi Minh City.

A. lived B. was living C. lives D. live

Question 10 [572934]: Up to now, the CEO _____ any information about his secretary.

A. didn't know B. knows C. hadn't known D. hasn't know

Question 11 [572935]: Jimmy _____ the door and _____ down on the chair, thinking about what he to her.

A. opens/sits/did B. opened/sat/did
C. opened/sat/had done D. opened/sat/has done

Question 12 [572936]: Where is Adam? – He _____ books in his room.

A. is reading B. read C. reads D. has read

Question 13 [572937]: In the past, people _____ *com* (young sticky rice flakes) by hand, but now they _____ machines for some steps to shorten the process.

A. make/use B. made/used C. made/use D. make/used

Question 14 [572938]: She _____ for him for ages and finally, he _____ with a bouquet of flowers in his hand.

A. waited/ appeared B. has been waiting/appeared
C. had waited/appeared D. is waiting/appears

Question 15 [572939]: Since Kevin _____ out of school, he _____ for a part-time job.

A. drops/looks B. dropped/looked
C. dropped/had looked D. dropped/ has been looking

Question 16 [572940]: We will inform you as soon as we _____ the interview result.

A. have B. had C. were having D. had had

Question 17 [572941]: My mom _____ the lunch box for me before she _____ to work.

A. prepared/went B. prepares/goes
C. have prepared/went D. had prepared/went

Question 18 [572942]: He _____ his homework yet when his friend _____ him to go out.

A. did not finish / called B. had not finished / called
C. has not finished / called did not D. don't finish / has called

Question 19 [572943]: Her phone _____ while she _____ to her new boss.

- A. was ringing/was talking B. rang/was talking
C. rang/talked D. was ringing/talked

Question 20 [572944]: How long she the piano so far? - 4 hours, I think.

- A. has/been practicing B. did/practice
C. does/practice D. had/practiced

Question 21 [572945]: Our team _____ plans while our rival was having dinner.

- A. discussed B. is discussing C. was discussing D. discuss

Question 22 [572946]: When I see him later, I _____ him that secret.

- A. tell B. will tell C. told D. had told

Question 23 [572947]: When we came to see her last night, she _____ a bath.

- A. is having B. had C. had had D. was having

Question 24 [572948]: A suit _____ to us before we came to the party.

- A. have sent B. is sent C. had been sent D. have been sent

Question 25 [572949]: In 2016, Vietnam _____ the third largest rice export country in the world.

- A. become B. became C. has become D. had become

Question 26 [572950]: The last time Sam _____ her own company was a long time ago.

- A. develops B. developed C. develop D. developing

Question 27 [572951]: When Linda was pregnant, her husband _____ care of her a lot.

- A. was taking B. is taking C. took D. has taken

Question 28 [572952]: Yesterday, I to school at 7 am, then I home at 11 am and my mom the lunch and waited for me.

- A. went/got/cooked B. went/had got/cooked
C. went/got/had cooked D. had went/got/cooked

Question 29 [572953]: I _____ you some money when I get on the train.

- A. lend B. lent C. lends D. will lend

Question 30 [572954]: While she _____, a thief _____ into the house.

- A. was sleeping/broke B. slept/broke
C. was sleeping/was breaking D. slept/was breaking

Rewrite these sentences using the past simple and the present perfect.

Tra ID Đề [5106] - Tra ID Video [5107]

Question 1 [572184]: Peter last wrote to her in February.

→ Peter has

Question 2 [572185]: He began playing volleyball 2 months ago.

→ He has

Question 3 [572186]: The last time I talked to her elder sister was yesterday

→ It was

Question 4 [572187]: It is two years since we last went on a picnic together.

→ The last

Question 5 [572188]: This is the first time Max has drunk this kind of soft drink.

→ Max has

Question 6 [572189]: How long have they travelled around the city?

→ When

Question 7 [572190]: I haven't seen him since last month.

→ The last

Question 8 [572191]: I started living in France when I was 8.

→ I have

Question 9 [572192]: Riley last ate tofu 3 days ago.

→ It's

Question 10 [572193]: She hasn't played badminton for five years.

→ The last

Chuyên đề CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG

VIII PASSIVE VOICE

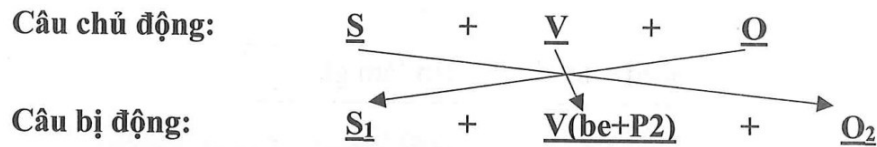
LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. CHUYỂN ĐỔI GIỮA CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG - CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG

Câu chủ động là khi chủ ngữ thực hiện hành động

Câu bị động là khi chủ ngữ tiếp nhận hành động (bị, được)

Cấu trúc chung của câu bị động: **be + P2**



Ví dụ:

Câu chủ động: I planted a tree yesterday.

Câu bị động: A tree was planted by me yesterday.

Dưới đây là dạng bị động của các thì:

Thì	Chủ động	Bị động
Hiện tại đơn	S + V(inf/s,es)	S + am/is/are + P2
Hiện tại tiếp diễn	S + am/is/are + V-ing	S + am/is/are + being + P2
Hiện tại hoàn thành	S + have/has + P2	S + have/has + been + P2
Quá khứ đơn	S + V(ed/P1)	S + was/were + P2
Quá khứ tiếp diễn	S + was/were + V-ing	S + was/were + being P2
Quá khứ hoàn thành	S + had + P2	S + had + been + P2
Tương lai đơn	S + will + V-inf	S + will + be + P2
Tương lai gần	S + am/is/are + going to + V-inf	S + am/is/are + going to + be + P2
Động từ khuyết thiếu	S + modal verb + V-inf	S + modal verb + be + P2

★ Lưu ý:

1. Có thể bỏ by + O khi O là đại từ tân ngữ (me/him/her/it/them/us/you)
2. Bắt buộc bỏ by + O khi O là people hoặc đại từ bất định như everyone, everybody, no one, nobody
3. by + O đứng sau trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn và đứng trước trạng từ chỉ thời gian.

II. CÁC LOẠI CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG ĐẶC BIỆT

1. Thể nhờ bảo, sai khiến với get và have

Dạng chủ động:

have sb V_{inf}
get sb to V_{inf} } có ai làm việc gì cho

Ví dụ:

Alice has the nail stylist do the nails for her. (Alice có người thợ làm móng làm móng cho cô ấy.)

→ Alice has her nails done by the nail stylist. (Alice có bộ móng được làm bởi người thợ móng.)

2. Bị động với need

Dạng chủ động:

need + to V: cần làm gì

Dạng bị động:

need + V_ing } cần được làm gì
need + to be P2 }

Ví dụ:

You need to water the flowers in the garden. (Bạn cần phải tưới hoa trong vườn.)

→ The flowers in the garden need watering. (Hoa trong vườn cần được tưới.)

→ The flowers in the garden need to be watered.

3. Bị động với câu có 2 tân ngữ

Có một số động từ sẽ được theo sau bởi 2 tân ngữ ví dụ như: give, buy, get, pay,...

Khi ở câu bị động, lần lượt các tân ngữ có thể được chuyển lên làm chủ ngữ. Vậy nên chúng ta có thể chuyển được thành 2 dạng.

Ví dụ:

He gave me the phone. (Anh ta đã đưa cho tôi cái điện thoại.)

S V O1 O2

→ The phone was given to me by him. (Cái điện thoại được đưa cho tôi bởi anh ta.)

→ I was given the phone call by him. (Tôi được đưa cho cái điện thoại bởi anh ta.)

Ở cách chuyển thứ 2, chúng ta có những động từ đi với 'to' và có những động từ đi với 'for':

+ Động từ đi với to: give, lend, send, show, pay, read,...

+ Động từ đi với for: buy, get, leave, make, save ...

Ví dụ:

I will buy you that dress. (Tôi mua cho bạn cái váy đó.)

→ That dress will be bought for you (by me). (Cái váy đó sẽ được mua cho bạn.)

4. Câu mệnh lệnh

Dạng chủ động:

V + O

Dạng bị động:

S1 + should/must + be + P2

Ví dụ:

Turn off the light, please! (Vui lòng tắt đèn đi!)

→ The light should be turned off. (Đèn nên được tắt đi.)

4. Bị động với động từ tường thuật

Các động từ tường thuật thường gặp: say, think, believe, expect, report, claim, consider, rumour,...

S1 + V_tường thuật + (that) + S2 + V2

Cách 1: **It + bị động của V_{tường thuật} + that + S2 + V2**

Cách 2:

+ Trường hợp 1: Khi V_{tường thuật} và V cùng thì

→ **S2+ bị động của V_{tường thuật} + to V2-inf**

+ Trường hợp 2: Khi V_{tường thuật} và V khác thì

→ **S2+ bị động của V_{tường thuật} + to have P2v2**

Ví dụ 1:

+ People think that he is an excellent artist. (Mọi người nghĩ rằng anh ta là một nghệ sĩ xuất sắc.)

Cách 1: It is thought that he is an excellent artist.

Cách 2: Vì 'think' và 'is' cùng thì nên ta dùng trường hợp 1

He is thought to be an excellent artist.

Ví dụ 2:

+ People believe that those pictures were burnt in the fire. (Mọi người nghĩ rằng những bức tranh đó đã bị cháy trong ngọn lửa.)

Cách 1: It is believed that those pictures were burnt in the fire.

Cách 2: Vì 'believe' và 'were burnt' khác thì nên ta dùng trường hợp 2

Those pictures are believed to have been burnt in the fire.

Ở ví dụ này, V2 - were burnt ở dạng bị động nên ở về sau ta phải dùng 'have been burnt' để giữ nguyên ý nghĩa của câu.

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Rewrite these sentences into passive voice.

Tra ID Đề [5109] - Tra BD Video [5110]

Question 1 [572373]: The storm damaged the roof of the house yesterday.

→ The roof

Question 2 [572374]: The farmer harvested the crops.

→ The crops

Question 3 [572375]: A waiter is serving dinner to the guests.

→ Dinner

Question 4 [572376]: The doctor will prescribe medication to the patient.

→ Medication

Question 5 [572377]: The scientist discovered a new species of plant.

→ A new species

Question 6 [572378]: Teachers should explain the lesson to students.

→ The lesson

Question 7 [572379]: My parents were playing volleyball at 5 pm yesterday.

→ Volleyball

Question 8 [572380]: Linda had left her car here by Monday.

→ Linda's

Question 9 [572381]: We need to love our planet.

→ Our planet

Question 10 [572382]: Peter had Paul paint the front gate.

→ Peter

Question 11 [572383]: The artist is going to create a masterpiece.

→ A masterpiece

Question 12 [572384]: I got the technician to repair the computer system.

→ I

Question 13 [572385]: The children didn't carry the boxes to the ballroom.

→ The boxes

Question 14 [572386]: The CEO was discussing the quarterly report with the board members.

→ The quarterly report

Question 15 [572387]: Will they finish the assignment?

→ Will

Question 16 [572388]: The manager scheduled a meeting for next Monday.

→ A meeting

Question 17 [572389]: A receptionist will give you the form to fill in.

→ The form

→ You

Question 18 [572390]: You need to close the door before going to sleep.

→ The door

Question 19 [572391]: Marvin could collect a lot of litter on the seashore today.

→ A lot of litter

Question 20 [572392]: Everyone had prevented the thief from shoplifting some golden rings.

→ The thief

Question 21 [572393]: What did you bring to the party?

→ What

Question 22 [572394]: Linda gets the shoemaker to fix her high heels.

→ Linda

Question 23 [572395]: Governments of countries in the world should prohibit smoking.

→ Smoking

Question 24 [572396]: People think that the driver reported the case to insurance companies.

→ It

→ The driver

Question 25 [572397]: My mom bought me breakfast before going to work.

→ Breakfast

Exercise 2. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề[5111] - Tra ID Video [5112]

Question 1 [572956]: The novel “Harry Porter” _____ by millions of readers worldwide.

- A. are read B. was read C. reading D. has read

Question 2 [572957]: The new bridge _____ next month.

- A. constructed B. is constructing C. built D. will be constructed

Question 3 [572958]: The concert of the famous singer _____ due to bad weather.

- A. canceled B. has canceled C. was canceling D. was canceled

Question 4 [572959]: An infamous gang _____ the bank last month.

- A. robbed B. was robbed C. has robbed D. is robbed

Question 5 [572960]: The assignment _____ by the teacher tomorrow.

- A. will be graded B. will grade C. is grading D. has graded

Question 6 [572961]: The cake that _____ at the party was baked by Mary earlier today.

- A. is being served B. will serve C. is serving D. have been served

Question 7 [572962]: The meeting _____ by the manager at the B2 building every Monday.

- A. conducts B. has conducted C. conducting D. is conducted

Question 8 [572963]: The government _____ new policies last year.

- A. will be announced B. was announced
C. announced D. was announced

Question 9 [572964]: A new building _____ by the architect at present.

- A. is built B. is building C. is being built D. was built

Question 10 [572965]: The invitations _____ before the party took place.

- A. are sent B. have been sent C. had been sent D. will be sent

Question 11 [572966]: He _____ by the company for his outstanding performance.

- A. was awarded B. awarded C. is being award D. was award

Question 12 [572967]: While I was watching my favorite series upstairs, a flowerpot _____ off the table.

- A. fell B. was fallen C. falls D. is fallen

Question 13 [572968]: The Browns _____ the old house.

- A. is renovate B. is going to be renovated
C. is going to renovate D. is renovated

Question 14 [572969]: Microsoft _____ a new product which allows various input devices.

- A. has launched B. is launched C. launched D. was launched

Question 15 [572970]: Bruce is thought _____ a dedicated teacher in the past.

A. he was B. to be C. to have been D. to been

Question 16 [572971]: By this time tomorrow the deal _____ signed.

A. has been signed B. will be signed
C. will have been signed D. is going to signed

Question 17 [572972]: Who _____ the prize _____ to?

A. was/given B. does/give C. was/gave D. does/given

Question 18 [572973]: The mayor _____ the new sports center next month.

A. will open B. will be opened C. is open D. opens

Question 19 [572974]: A lot of olive oil _____ in Italy every year.

A. produces B. is produced C. was produced D. produced

Question 20 [572975]: When he got home, he found that his flat _____.

A. was burgled B. has been burgled
C. had been burgled D. has burgled

Question 21 [572976]: He has been working hard for many years. He needs _____ by his boss.

A. to recognize B. recognize C. recognizing D. to be recognized

Question 22 [572977]: Mistakes _____, but we're working to solve them now.

A. were made B. make C. is being made D. is making

Question 23 [572978]: Janet rode an airplane yesterday for the first time. The airplane, which _____ by Singapore Airlines, _____ by an experienced pilot.

A. was operated/was flew B. operated/was flown
C. was operated/flew D. was operated/was flown

Question 24 [572979]: Mosquitoes are thought to _____ the disease.

A. transmitted B. transmit
C. have transmitted D. have been transmitted

Question 25 [572980]: I'll get in touch with the delivery man and get him _____ it to you right away.

A. send B. to send C. sent D. sending

Question 26 [572981]: Cigarettes _____ to be bad for people's health.

A. know B. are known C. knew D. had been known

Question 27 [572982]: _____ you _____ enough sugar? They gave me too little.

A. Did/given B. Were/give C. Did/give D. Were/given

Question 28 [572983]: No one _____ this mountain before.

A. has climbed B. climbed C. was climbed D. is climbed

Question 29 [572984]: They were living in tents which _____ out of old plastic sheets.

A. is made B. are made C. make D. made

Question 30 [572985]: The door was opened _____ a hammer.

A. by B. with C. for D. of

Question 31 [572986]: The detective _____ the woman putting the jewelry in her bag.

- A. was seen B. saw C. is seen D. see

Question 32 [572987]: Listen! I think there's somebody walking behind us. Perhaps _____.

- A. we are following B. we are being followed
C. we are followed D. we are being following

Question 33 [572988]: Last week, a flood swept through Colorado. It _____ everything in its path.

- A. destroyed B. was destroyed
C. was being destroyed D. had been destroyed

Question 34 [572989]: The money that Kevin _____ before.

- A. am not given/borrowed B. haven't been given/borrowed
C. gave/borrowed D. haven't been given/was borrowed

Question 35 [572990]: If you _____ the same question, what will the answer be?

- A. asked B. are asked C. are asking D. will be asked

Question 36 [572991]: Marine species _____ by all the plastic we are dumping in the ocean.

- A. were killed B. are being killed C. have been killing D. are killing

Question 37 [572992]: The eight-ton rockets would _____ with the hope of reaching the Moon.

- A. fire B. be fired C. been fired D. fired

Question 38 [572993]: Millennials are into _____ supported and appreciated by their company.

- A. to be B. be C. being D. Ø

Question 39 [572994]: My brother _____ his phone repaired 3 days ago.

- A. has B. got C. made D. let

Question 40 [572995]: The Statue of Liberty _____ to the United States from France to celebrate 100 years of America's independence.

- A. was gifted B. is gifted C. will be gift D. has been gifted

Exercise 3. Rewrite these sentences into active voice.

Tra ID Đề [5113] - **Tra ID Video** [5114]

Question 1 [572996]: Was your finger bitten by a fierce dog?

→ Did

Question 2 [572997]: The exhibition has already been seen by two million people.

→ Two million people

Question 3 [572998]: Dangerous chemicals must be kept in a safe place.

→ You

Question 4 [572999]: We are having our house painted by a local painter.

→ We

Question 5 [573000]: The new concert hall is being designed by a Greek architect.

→ A Greek architect

Question 6 [573001]: He is thought to have been a wonderful engineer in the past.

→ People think

Question 7 [573002]: Has the decision been made by the committee?

→ Has

Question 8 [573003]: The problem is going to be solved by the experts.

→ The experts

Question 9 [573004]: The annual conference was attended by over five hundred delegates.

→ Over five hundred delegates

Question 10 [573005]: The letter must be sent by the secretary.

→ The secretary

Question 11 [573006]: This charity event needs to be organized by a group of enthusiastic volunteers.

→ A group of enthusiastic volunteers

Question 12 [573007]: A cake will be made for me on my birthday.

→ My mom

Question 13 [573008]: Your complaint is being dealt with by our manager.

→ Our manager

Question 14 [573009]: Excellent research on climate change was conducted by a team of scientists.

→ A team of scientists

Question 15 [573010]: I was given two apples by Carter.

→ Carter

Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps in the passages below with either active or passive voice.

Tra ID Đề [5115] - Tra ID Video [5116]

Passage 1

The new software _____ (1. develop) by our team for over a year now. With meticulous attention to detail, every line of code _____ (2. write) to ensure maximum efficiency. We also _____ (3. conduct) several rounds of testing to guarantee output quality. Our clients _____ (4. inform) about the upcoming release last month. Since then, their feedback _____ (5. carefully consider) in further innovation. The CEO _____ (6. schedule) the final version for launch next week. Once deployed, it _____ (7. expect) to revolutionize the industry. Our team is so excited about the impact it will make.

Passage 2

Welcome to our summer camp, where adventure and learning _____ (1. take place) in equal measure! Our campers _____ (2. encourage) to embrace the great outdoors, where they _____ (3. discover) new skills and create memories that will last a lifetime. Each day, activities _____ (4. schedule) to cater to all interests and

abilities. Safety is our top priority, with experienced counselors ensuring that every camper _____ (5. take care of) throughout their time here. Our aim is for every camper to leave feeling inspired, confident, and eager to return next summer. So, what are you waiting for? Join us for a summer filled with fun, growth, and endless possibilities!

Exercise 5. Circle the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to the original sentence in each of the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5117] - Tra ID Video [5118]

Question 1 [573011]: *They oughtn't to give children sweets.*

- A. Children oughtn't to give them sweets.
- B. Children oughtn't to be given sweets.
- C. Sweets oughtn't to be given children.
- D. Sweets oughtn't be given to children.

Question 2 [573012]: *Someone used to send me anonymous letters.*

- A. I was used to be sent anonymous letters.
- B. Anonymous letters used to be sent for me.
- C. I used to be sent anonymous letters.
- D. Anonymous letters used to send to me.

Question 3 [573013]: *People think that reading can improve imagination and creativity.*

- A. Reading is thought that can improve imagination and creativity.
- B. Reading is thought improving imagination and creativity.
- C. It is thought that reading can improve imagination and creativity.
- D. It is thought that reading to improve imagination and creativity.

Question 4 [573014]: *She has just found her dog in the garden.*

- A. Her dog has just found by her in the garden.
- B. Her dog has just been found by her in the garden.
- C. Her dog has just been found in the garden by her.
- D. Her dog have just been found by her in the garden.

Question 5 [573015]: *His friends gave him this football.*

- A. This football is given to him by his friends.
- B. This football has been given to him by his friends.
- C. This football was given to him by his friends.
- D. This football will be given to him by his friends.

Question 6 [573016]: *They got the company to sponsor their event.*

- A. The company was got to sponsor their event by them.
- B. Their event was got sponsored by the company by them.
- C. The company was got by them to sponsor their event.

D. They got their event sponsored by the company.

Question 7 [573017]: *The company is launching a new product next month.*

- A. A new product was launched by the company next month.
- B. A new product is launching by the company next month.
- C. A new product is being launched by the company next month.
- D. A new product had been launched by the company next month.

Question 8 [573018]: *The house needs renovating because it has been neglected for years.*

- A. Renovating is needed for the house because it has been neglected for years.
- B. Because of neglect for years, the house needs renovating.
- C. The house needs to renovate because of years of neglect.
- D. The house needs to have been renovated due to years of neglect.

Question 9 [573019]: *The mechanic fixed my car yesterday.*

- A. My car was being fixed by the mechanic yesterday.
- B. My car got fixed yesterday by the mechanic.
- C. My car was fixed yesterday by the mechanic.
- D. I had my car fixed by the mechanic yesterday.

Question 10 [573020]: *They believe that technology will solve many of our problems.*

- A. It is believed that many of our problems will be solved by technology.
- B. Many of our problems was believed to be solved by technology.
- C. Technology is believed to solve many of our problems by them.
- D. Many of our problems are believed to solve by technology.

Question 11 [573021]: *The news reported that a new discovery has been made.*

- A. It was reported that a new discovery has been made by the news.
- B. A new discovery was reported to have been made by the news.
- C. The news is reported to make a new discovery.
- D. A new discovery is reported by the news.

Question 12 [573022]: *The parents had their children vaccinated against measles.*

- A. The children had to be vaccinated against measles by the parents.
- B. The children had vaccinated against measles by the parents.
- C. The children had been vaccinated against measles by the parents.
- D. The children had measles vaccinated against by the parents.

Question 13 [573023]: *Everyone needs to finish the project by Friday.*

- A. The project needs to be finished by Friday.
- B. It is needed to finish the project by Friday by everyone.
- C. The project needs to be finished by everyone by Friday.
- D. By Friday, the project needs to finishing.

Question 14. [583468] *Did Alexander G. Bell invent the telephone?*

- A. Did the telephone be invented by Alexander G. Bell?
- B. Was the telephone invented by Alexander G. Bell?
- C. Did the telephone invent by Alexander G. Bell?
- D. Was the telephone been invented by Alexander G. Bell ?

Question 15. [583469] *The teacher explained the rule to the students.*

- A. The rule was explained to the students.
- B. The students were explained the rule.
- C. The students were explained the rules.
- D. Both A and B are correct

ENGLISH AROUND THE WORLD

1. TỔNG HỢP TỪ VỰNG CẦN NHỚ

STT	Từ	Từ loại	Nghĩa
1	ability	n	khả năng
2	abroad	adv	ở nước ngoài
3	accent	n	kiểu giọng
4	access	v	truy cập
5	accurate	adj	chính xác
	accuracy	n	sự chính xác
6	acquire	v	đạt được, tiếp nhận
7	authentic	adj	thật
8	barrier	n	rào cản
	benefit	n	lợi ích có
9	beneficial	adj	lợi
10	bilingual	adj	thông thạo 2 thứ tiếng
11	borrow >< lend	v	mượn
		v	cho mượn
12	career	n	sự nghiệp
13	common	adj	phổ biến, thường thấy
	communicate	v	giao tiếp
14	communication	n	việc giao tiếp
15	complicated	adj	phức tạp
16	compulsory	adj	bắt buộc
17	confident	adj	tự tin
	confidence	n	sự tự tin
18	content	n	nội dung
19	convenient	adj	thuận tiện
20	develop	v	phát triển
	development	n	sự phát triển
21	dialect	n	tiếng địa phương
22	dictionary	n	từ điển
23	direction	n	hướng
24	discuss	v	bàn luận

	discussion	n	cuộc thảo luận
25	essential	adj	thiết yếu
26	exchange student	np	sinh viên trao đổi
27	express	v	bày tỏ
28	flexible	adj	linh hoạt
29	fluent	adj	trôi chảy
	foreign	adj	(thuộc về) nước ngoài người
30	foreigner	n	nước ngoài
31	function	n	chức năng
32	global	adj	toàn cầu
33	guide	v	hướng dẫn
34	immigrant	n	dân nhập cư
35	improve	v	cải thiện
36	international	adj	(thuộc) quốc tế
37	knowledge	n	kiến thức, tri thức
38	linguist	n	nhà ngôn ngữ học
39	lyric	n	lời bài hát
40	material	n	chất liệu, vật liệu
41	mean	v	có nghĩa là
42	message	n	thông điệp, lời nhắn
43	method	n	phương pháp
44	mistake	n	lỗi
45	mother tongue = first language	np	tiếng mẹ đẻ
46	native speaker	np	người bản xứ
47	official language	np	ngôn ngữ chính thống
48	organize	v	tổ chức
49	partner	n	bạn đồng hành
50	population	n	dân số
51	present	v	trình bày
	presentation	n	bài thuyết trình
52	proficient	adj	thành thạo
53	recommend	v	đề xuất
54	revise	v	xem lại, ôn lại
	revision	n	việc xem lại
55	spread	v	lan ra

56	subtitle	n	phụ đề
57	trade	v	giao thương
58	translate	v	dịch
59	variety	n	sự đa dạng
	various	adj	đa dạng
60	widen	v	mở rộng

2. TỔNG HỢP CẤU TRÚC CẦN NHỚ

STT	Cụm	Nghĩa
1	be good at sth/V-ing >< be bad at sth/V-ing	giỏi về cái gì/ làm gì tệ về cái gì/ làm gì
2	come across	tình cờ thấy
3	figure out	tìm ra
4	go over sth	xem lại, rà soát lại
5	hand in	nộp
6	intend + to V = have an intention of + V-ing	có dự định làm gì
7	look up	tra cứu
8	look for	tìm kiếm
9	note sth down	ghi chép lại
10	pay attention to sth	chú ý đến điều gì
11	pick up sth	học được một kiến thức/ kỹ năng
12	sign up (for) sth	đăng kí (tài khoản, lớp học)
13	turn on	bật

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions

Tra ID Đề [5122] - Tra ID Video [5123]

Question 1 [574086]: When studying _____, students often get valuable views from different cultures in the world.

A. locally B. abroad C. nationally D. internationally

Question 2 [574087]: For viewers who don't speak the primary language of a film, _____ can greatly improve their understanding and enjoyment.

A. content B. message C. soundtrack D. subtitle

Question 3 [574088]: For many people, being proficient in their _____ language provides a strong foundation for learning additional languages later in life.

A. native B. foreign C. global D. father

Question 4 [574089]: The singer poured her heart into the _____, conveying emotion through her music.

A. step B. lyrics C. word D. accent

Question 5 [574090]: Before the final exam, students should manage time for _____ to ensure thorough understanding of the lessons.

A. reading B. revision C. translating D. research

Question 6 [574091]: Reading books from various genres can help _____ knowledge.

A. widen B. narrow C. deepen D. limit

Question 7 [574092]: One's _____ is usually the first language they learn as a child.

A. nation tongue B. foreign language
C. mother tongue D. international language

Question 8 [574093]: Learning a _____ language can open new career opportunities for travel and communication.

A. native B. familiar C. foreign D. regional

Question 9 [574094]: Regular exercise can help _____ overall health and well-being.

A. widen B. decrease C. worsen D. improve

Question 10 [574095]: Students need a valid username and password to gain _____ to the online learning platform.

A. entry B. approach C. access D. admission

Question 11 [574096]: A _____ is someone who acquires a language naturally in childhood and uses it as their primary means of communication.

A. multilingual B. bilingual C. native speaker D. linguist

Question 12 [574097]: Language differences can often act as a _____ to effective communication between people from different cultures.

A. bridge B. barrier C. path D. translator

Question 13 [574098]: To improve your driving skills, it's essential to pay _____ to road signs and follow traffic laws.

A. ignore B. overlook C. attention D. money

Question 14 [574099]: Students are encouraged to review the learning _____ before the exam to acquire all the course content.

A. textbook B. homework C. material D. syllabus

Question 15 [574100]: The English teacher provided extra support for _____ speakers to improve their language skills.

A. native B. fluent C. non-native D. bilingual

Question 16 [574101]: The experienced teacher will _____ the students through the process of conducting scientific experiments in the laboratory.

A. watch B. follow C. guide D. observe

Question 17 [574102]: When coming across strange words, students are encouraged to use a

dictionary to _____ their meanings.

- A. look into B. look up C. look for D. look after

Question 18 [574103]: To improve the essay, the student decided to _____ it carefully, making changes to increase clarity and coherence.

- A. reduce B. revise C. translate D. organize

Question 19 [574104]: Understanding the _____ of a word is essential for effective communication.

- A. spelling B. grammar C. letters D. meaning

Question 20 [574105]: In international settings, people who originate from a different country and are not citizens of the host nation are commonly known as _____.

- A. residents B. locals C. immigrants D. foreigners

Question 21 [574106]: The swimming pool is a _____ area where all residents of the apartment complex can relax and cool off during hot days.

- A. private B. personal C. common D. banned

Question 22 [574107]: Students are required to _____ their assignments by the deadline to avoid late penalties.

- A. throw away B. hand in C. give up D. come across

Question 23 [574108]: During a team-building exercise, each participant is assigned a _____ to complete various tasks together.

- A. partner B. linguist C. competitor D. opponent

Question 24 [574109]: Before finalizing the project report, the team decided to _____ it one more time to check for typing errors.

- A. turn on B. go over C. sign up D. hand in

Question 25 [574110]: In order to have meaningful conversations with native speakers, it's advantageous to be _____ in their language.

- A. fluent B. confident C. skilful D. skilled

Question 26 [574111]: In many schools, wearing a uniform is _____ for all students on Monday.

- A. optional B. voluntary C. compulsory D. free

Question 27 [574112]: In different regions of a country, people may speak with a different _____.

- A. language B. dialect C. words D. pronunciation

Question 28 [574113]: A(n) _____ student is a student who studies abroad as part of a program that allows them to experience life in a different country.

- A. immigrant B. exchange C. resident D. tourist

Question 29 [574114]: Being _____ opens up many opportunities for international careers and cultural experiences.

- A. monolingual B. linguist C. non-language D. multilingual

Question 30 [574115]: Clear and effective _____ is crucial for teams to work together and achieve

their goals.

A. population

B. communication

C. recommendation

D. pronunciation

Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks with the suitable given words.

Tra ID Đề [5124] - Tra ID Video [5125]

Paragraph 1:

spread	various	complicated
official	fluency	abroad

English is widely spoken around the world, both as a(n) (1) _____ language and as a second language by people living (2) _____. It serves as an official language in many countries, making it an important tool for international communication. Its use has (3) _____ to almost every corner of the globe. Learning English can greatly improve one's (4) _____ and open new opportunities for personal growth. While English grammar and vocabulary can be (5) _____, especially for beginners, there are plenty of resources available to help learners improve their skills. Overall, English plays a vital role in communicating and understanding among people from (6) _____ cultures and backgrounds.

Paragraph 2:

express	confident	bilingual
mother tongue	foreign	international

English has become an (1) _____ language, spoken by millions of people worldwide. While many people grow up speaking their (2) _____, there is a growing trend on becoming (3) _____ due to its global importance. Being fluent in English enables people to feel more (4) _____ when communicating in a (5) _____ language context, whether for travel, work, or education. Moreover, English is used as the primary language for communication in various fields such as business, science,... Proficiency in English helps people (6) _____ themselves on a global scale, connecting cultures across borders. Therefore, becoming proficient in English is increasingly seen as a valuable skill in today's interconnected world.

Paragraph 3:

mistakes	vocabulary	come across
practice	acquiring	subtitles
		practice

When learning English, there are some simple yet effective tips to help you succeed.

- (1) _____ regularly by spending a few minutes each day to study English.
- Immerse yourself in the language by listening to English music, watching movies or TV shows with (2) _____, and reading English books or articles. This helps improve comprehension and (3) _____.
- Don't be afraid to make (4) _____. They are a natural part of learning, so take them as

opportunities to improve.

- Try to use English in your daily life whenever possible, whether it's writing emails, chatting with friends, or ordering food.
- Whenever you (5) _____ new words, note them down for further revision. Don't forget to look up the (6) _____.
- Be patient and don't get discouraged. (7) _____ a new language takes time, so celebrate your progress along the way and stay motivated.

By following these tips, you'll find that learning English can be both enjoyable and rewarding.

Exercise 3. Rewrite the following sentences by using the word in the brackets.

Tra ID Đề [5126] - Tra ID Video [5127]

Question 1 [574116]: The coach told the players to watch their opponents closely. (**ATTENTION**)

→

Question 2 [574117]: Lisa is proficient in speaking Spanish. (**GOOD**)

→

Question 3 [574118]: Please review the notes carefully before starting the experiment. (**OVER**)

→

Question 4 [574119]: I plan to visit my grandparents next weekend. (**INTENTION**)

→

Question 5 [574120]: Students must submit their completed projects by the end of the week. (**HAND**)

→

Question 6 [574121]: I found an interesting article while browsing the internet by chance. (**ACROSS**)

→

Question 7 [574122]: She quickly learned how to play the guitar. (**UP**)

→

Question 8 [574123]: He understood the complicated instructions after reading them multiple times. (**FIGURE**)

→

Question 9 [574124]: She sought her favorite book in the library for hours. (**LOOK**)

→

Question 10 [574125]: Sarah plans to travel to Europe next summer. (**INTEND**)

→

Exercise 4. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5128] - Tra ID Video [SI 29J]

Question 1 [574126]: Peter decided to study abroad to experience different cultures and languages.

A. locally B. overseas C. internationally D. distantly

Question 2 [574127]: Maria is proficient in playing the piano, but she struggles with the guitar.

A. skilled B. incompetent C. capable D. excellent

Question 3 [574128]: The location of the new grocery store is very **inconvenient** for residents, as it's too far from their homes.

A. flexible B. beautiful C. approachable D. magnificent

Question 4 [574129]: My **mother tongue**, which is Bengali, connects me to my cultural heritage."

A. first language B. second language C. official language D. dialect

Question 5 [574130]: The course includes **compulsory** readings that all students must complete.

A. mandatory B. optional C. necessary D. required

Exercise 5. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5130] - Tra ID Video [5131]

Question 1 [574131]: The department store sells **various** types of fruits, including apples, oranges, and bananas.

A. diverse B. abundant C. single D. limited

Question 2 [574132]: The restaurant is known for its **authentic** Italian cuisine.

A. genuine B. artificial C. imitation D. fake

Question 3 [574133]: Regular exercise has many **beneficial** effects on both physical and mental health.

A. flexible B. confident C. advantageous D. harmful

Question 4 [574134]: Language **differences** can sometimes make communication between people from different countries more difficult.

A. trade B. barriers C. translation D. similarities

Question 5 [574135]: The map provided **accurate** directions to the destination so Anna could easily go to the station.

A. correct B. similar C. wrong D. large

Exercise 6. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct arrangement of sentences to make a meaningful paragraph/letter for the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5132] - Tra ID Video [5133]

Question 1 [581949]:

- a. Next, find language exchange partners so that you can speak English as much as possible.
- b. There are some effective tips for learning English.
- c. Finally, set specific, achievable goals to stay motivated and track your progress.
- d. First, make English a part of your daily routine.
- e. To sum up, be patient because language learning takes time and find yourself a suitable method.
- f. Let's try to surround yourself with English through music, movies, and books every day.

A. b-d-f-a-c-e B. b-d-a-f-c-e C. b-d-a-c-f-e D. b-f-d-c-a-e

Question! [581950]:

- a. I'd love to hear about what's new with you! Warm regards, Sarah.
 - b. I wanted to share a little about my journey learning English.
 - c. Dear Chloe, I hope this letter finds you well!
 - d. I'm excited to continue improving and exploring more of the language.
 - e. I've been practicing daily, using language apps, and immersing myself in English through movies and books.
 - f. Also, speaking with native speakers has really boosted my confidence, and I've noticed my vocabulary expanding.
- A. c-e-f-d-b-a B. c-d-f-b-e-a C. c-b-e-f-d-a D. c-b-e-d-f-a**

Question 3 [581951]:

- a. English is very popular around the world.
 - b. However, other languages, like Mandarin and Hindu, are also developing strongly.
 - c. Besides, its wide use in media and travel makes it a key language for connecting with people everywhere.
 - d. Many people also learn it to communicate with others from different countries and to access global opportunities.
 - e. It's used in business, movies, and the internet.
- A. a-d-e-b-c B. a-e-d-c-b C. a-c-d-e-b D. a-e-c-b-d**

Question 4 [581952]:

- a. Reading books is an effective way to learn new words.
 - b. Flashcards can help you remember new vocabulary faster.
 - c. Then, trying to use new words in sentences helps you practice and remember them better.
 - d. When you have a wide range of vocabulary, your writing skill will be improved.
 - e. They help us to make a habit of learning new words through images and sometimes audio.
- A. a-d-b-c-e B. d-a-b-c-e C. a-b-e-c-d D. a-e-b-c-d**

Question 5 [581953]:

- a. By following these methods, you'll see significant improvements in your grammar.
 - b. Another effective method is to write regularly and seek feedback on your writing to identify and correct any grammatical mistakes.
 - c. Practicing grammar regularly by reading can help you understand grammar rules better.
 - d. One of the best ways to enhance your grammar is to regularly read books and articles.
 - e. Best wishes.
 - f. Dear Student, I hope this message finds you well! I wanted to offer you some advice on improving your grammar skills.
- A. f-c-a-d-b-e B. f-d-c-b-a-e C. f-d-b-a-c-e D. f-a-d-b-c-e**

Chuyên đề IX CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. CÁC LOẠI CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN CƠ BẢN

Các câu điều kiện thường gắn liền với 'if - nếu' và gồm hai mệnh đề. Mệnh đề chứa if là mệnh đề điều kiện, và mệnh đề còn lại là mệnh đề kết quả. Mệnh đề if có thể đứng trước hoặc sau.

1. Câu điều kiện loại 0

➤ Nói về chân lý, sự thật hiển nhiên, luật pháp.

If (when) + S + V_(hiện tại đơn), S + V_(hiện tại đơn)

Ví dụ:

Ice melts if you heat it. (*Đá tan ra nếu bạn đun nóng nó. — một sự thật hiển nhiên.*)

2. Câu điều kiện loại 1

➤ Nói về sự việc có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

If + S + V_(hiện tại đơn), S + will/can/may + V_(inf)

Ví dụ:

If it rains, I will play truant. (*Nếu trời mưa, tôi sẽ bùng học.*)

➤ Câu điều kiện loại 1 còn được dùng với câu mệnh lệnh tại mệnh đề kết quả.

Ví dụ:

Please tell him I am busy if he calls me. (*Hãy nói với anh ấy rằng tôi bận nếu anh ấy gọi cho tôi.*)

3. Câu điều kiện loại 2

➤ Nói về sự việc không có thật ở hiện tại

If + S + V_(quá khứ đơn), S + would/could/might + V_(inf)

Ví dụ:

If I were you, I would buy that house. (*Nếu tôi là bạn, tôi sẽ mua cái nhà đó.*)

★ Lưu ý: Với câu điều kiện loại 2, to be ở vế if thường được chia là were cho mọi chủ ngữ. Tuy nhiên, was cũng được chấp nhận.

4. Câu điều kiện loại 3

➤ Nói về sự việc không có thật trong quá khứ

If + S + V_(quá khứ hoàn thành), S + would/could/might + have + P₂

Ví dụ:

If Joey hadn't ordered pizza, we would have had sushi yesterday. (*Nếu Joey không đặt pizza, chúng ta đã ăn sushi vào hôm qua rồi.*)

II. CÁC TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐẶC BIỆT CỦA CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

1. Unless = If... not: nếu ... không/trừ khi

Ví dụ:

You will fail the test if you do not study hard.

= Unless you study hard, you will fail the test. (*Bạn sẽ trượt nếu bạn không học chăm.*)

2. As long as = so long as: miễn là (chỉ dùng với CĐKL1)**Ví dụ:**

We will go camping if the weather is fine.

= As long as the weather is fine, we will go camping. (*Miễn là thời tiết đẹp, chúng ta sẽ đi cắm trại.*)

3. Provided that = providing that: miễn là (chỉ dùng với CĐKL1)**Ví dụ:**

If the price is reasonable, I will buy that car.

= Providing that the price is reasonable, I will buy that car. (*Miễn là giá cả hợp lý, tôi sẽ mua cái xe đó.*)

4. Suppose/Supposing: giả sử (chỉ dùng với CĐKL2,3)**Ví dụ:**

Supposing you were a millionaire, what would you do? (*Giả sử bạn là triệu phú, bạn sẽ làm gì?*)

5. Câu điều kiện với danh từ. (Nếu không vì...)**➤ Câu điều kiện loại 2**

If it weren't for + N, S + would/could/might + V_(inf)

Ví dụ:

If it weren't for the tornado, we could visit my grandparents. (*Neu không vì cơn lốc, chúng tôi có thể đi thăm ông bà rồi.*)

➤ Câu điều kiện loại 3

If it hadn't been for + N, S + would/could/might + have + P₂

Ví dụ:

If it hadn't been for his broken leg, Barry could have gone downstairs by himself. (*Neu không vì cái chân gãy, Barry đã có thể tự đi xuống tầng rồi.*)

➤ But for + N/V_{-ing} = Without + N/V_{-ing}: nếu không vì, nếu không có**Ví dụ:**

Without water, plants couldn't survive. (*Neu không có nước, cây cối không thể tồn tại.*)

6. In case và in case of: trong trường hợp, phòng khi**➤ In case + S + V****➤ In case of + N/V_{-ing}****Ví dụ:**

I will bring the camera in case we want to take some pictures. (*Tôi sẽ mang theo máy ảnh trong trường hợp chúng ta muốn chụp vài tấm ảnh.*)

In case of emergency, please call 911. (*Trong trường hợp khẩn cấp, vui lòng gọi 911.*)

III. CẤU TRÚC CÂU ƯỚC - WISH**1. Câu ước ở hiện tại**

Ví dụ: I wish I won the lottery ticket. (*Tôi ước rằng tôi thắng vẽ số.*)

2. Câu ước ở quá khứ

S + wish + S + V_{quá khứ hoàn thành}

Ví dụ: I wish I hadn't said that. (*Tôi ước tôi đã không nói vậy.*)

3. Câu ước với would

Nói về một việc đang diễn ra hoặc sắp diễn ra gây khó chịu.

S + wish + S + would + V_{inf}

I Ví dụ / I wish you wouldn't come through the kitchen with your dirty boots on. (*Tôi ước bạn không đi qua nhà bếp với đôi giày bị bẩn.*)

★ **Lưu ý 1:** khi muốn nói về điều chúng ta muốn xảy ra trong tương lai, dùng 'hope' thay vì 'wish'.

★ **Lưu ý 2:** các bạn cũng có thể thay 'wish' bằng 'if only' vì nó có nghĩa tương tự là 'giá như'.

4. wish + to V: muốn làm gì

Ví dụ: They wish to know about Audrey more. (*Họ muốn được biết về Audrey nhiều hơn.*)

5. wish + O + N: chúc ai cái gì

Ví dụ: We wish you a Merry Christmas. (*Chúng tôi chúc bạn một Giáng Sinh an lành.*)

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Fill in the blanks using the conditional sentence type 1.

Tra ID Đề [5135] - Tra ID Video [5136]

Question 1 [572494]: You _____ (pass) the exam if you _____ (work) hard.

Question 2 [572495]: If it _____ (rain) tomorrow, we _____ (stay) indoors.

Question 3 [572496]: They _____ (go) to the movies if they _____ (finish) their homework.

Question 4 [572497]: If Jim _____ (start) exercising regularly, he _____ (improve) his health and feel more energetic.

Question 5 [572498]: If she _____ (practice) playing the piano every day, she _____ (eventually master) the difficult pieces.

Question 6 [572499]: If you _____ (pay) attention in class, you _____ (understand) the lessons better and perform well on exams.

Question 7 [572500]: They _____ (achieve) their project goals if the team _____ (work) together collaboratively.

Question 8 [572501]: If Paule and Louis _____ (attend) the conference next month, they (have) the chance to meet industry experts.

Question 9 [572502]: You _____ (buy) that new phone if you _____ (save) money.

Question 10 [572503]: We _____ (reduce) our carbon footprint if we _____

(use) renewable energy sources.

Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks using the conditional sentence type 2.

Tra ID Đề [5137] - Tra ID Video [5138]

Question 1 [572504]: If they _____ (save) money, they _____ (afford) to travel.

Question 2 [572505]: I _____ (communicate) with my colleagues if I _____ (speak) Spanish.

Question 3 [572506]: If she _____ (wake) up early, she _____ (not miss) the bus every morning.

Question 4 [572507]: If they _____ (invest) in their education, they _____ (not be) stuck in low-paying jobs.

Question 5 [572508]: She _____ (not feel) burnt out by the end of the day if she _____ (take) breaks.

Question 6 [572509]: If we _____ (double-check) our work, we _____ (frequently make) mistakes.

Question 7 [572510]: It _____ (not be) messy if they _____ (clean) their house more often.

Question 8 [572511]: If we _____ (check) the weather forecast, we _____ (not get) caught in the rain.

Question 9 [572512]: If he _____ (wear) a seatbelt, he _____ (not risk) injury in case of an accident.

Question 10 [572513]: If he _____ (apologize) when he's wrong, he _____ (not ruin) his relationships.

Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks using the conditional sentence type 3.

Tra ID Đề [5139] - Tra ID Video [5140]

Question 1 [573024]: If she _____ (wake) up on time, she _____ (not miss) the train.

Question 2 [573025]: He _____ (get) the job if he _____ (have) more experience.

Question 3 [573026]: If she _____ (be) friendlier, she _____ (invite) to the party.

Question 4 [573027]: They _____ (win) the match if they _____ (play) better.

Question 5 [573028]: If the driver _____ (not text) while driving, the car _____ (not crash).

Question 6 [573029]: If they _____ (follow) the map properly, they _____ (not get) lost.

Question 7 [573030]: The concert _____ (not cancel) if the weather _____ (not be) bad.

Question 8 [573031]: If they _____ (submit) their proposal on time, they _____ (win) the contract.

Question 9 [573032]: If his alarm clock _____ (go) off, he _____ (not miss) the flight.

Question 10 [573033]: If they _____ (arrive) at the cinema on time, they _____ (see) the movie.

Exercise 4. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra Đà [5141] - Tra ID Video [5142]

Question 1 [573034]: If the weather _____ nice, we to the beach _____ yesterday.

A. was/would B. were/will go C. is/will D. had been/would have gone

Question 2 [573035]: If you _____ to the party, I would introduce you to my friends.

A. come B. came C. will come D. coming

Question 3 [573036]: We might have avoided the accident if we _____ more careful.

A. are B. were C. had been D. being

Question 4 [573037]: If she _____ English fluently, she will apply for that job.

A. would speak B. spoke C. will speak D. speaks

Question 5 [573038]: You _____ water if you mix hydrogen and oxygen.

A. will get B. get C. would got D. would get

Question 6 [573039]: I'll come and give a hand if Peter _____ helps to move your stuff.

A. might need B. needs C. need D. needed

Question 7 [573040]: It easier if George had brought his own car.

A. would be B. will be C. would have been D. would been

Question 8 [573041]: Unless you weeks in advance, you won't get a seat.

A. don't book B. book C. didn't book D. booked

Question 9 [573042]: If he more carefully, he wouldn't have crashed his car.

A. had driven B. drove C. driving D. will drive

Question 10 [573043]: If I _____ you, the problem _____ immediately.

A. am/will solve B. am/will be solved
C. were/would solve D. were/would be solved

Question 11 [573044]: I won't go to the party unless you with me.

A. come B. don't come C. will come D. came

Question 12 [573045]: Kevin _____ the challenge last week if he that it would be _____ so difficult.

A. wouldn't accept/had known B. wouldn't have accepted/ knew
C. wouldn't accept/knew D. wouldn't have accepted/ had known

Question 13 [573046]: If anyone _____, just say I'll be back in the office at four o'clock.

- A. call B. called C. calls D. had called

Question 14 [573047]: But for _____, I couldn't realize he was a liar.

- A. you helped me B. your help C. you help me D. your helped

Question 15 [573048]: You _____ go to college for a lot of years if you want to be a doctor.

- A. will have to B. had to C. have to D. has to

Question 16 [573049]: _____ you mind if I opened the window?

- A. Will B. Do C. Would D. Did

Question 17 [573050]: Shall I keep some chicken salad for your brother _____ he's hungry when he gets here?

- A. in case B. provided C. even if D. as long as

Question 18 [573051]: Come and work for my company if you _____ better to do.

- A. have nothing B. will have nothing
C. had something D. had nothing

Question 19 [573052]: If fossil fuel _____ inexpensive and unlimited, maybe we wouldn't need to look for renewable energy.

- A. is B. will be C. were D. would be

Question 20 [573053]: I wish I that. I can see I've upset you.

- A. said B. didn't say C. hadn't said D. won't say

Question 21 [573054]: If you had the chance, _____ you go to Phu Quoc Island?

- A. will B. do C. would D. may

Question 22 [573055]: Loren wished _____ in a palace. Her old house was so small.

- A. lived B. had lived C. would live D. live

Question 23 [573056]: We _____ him if we _____ here 2 weeks ago.

- A. would meet/were B. will meet/are
C. meet/are D. would have met/had been

Question 24 [573057]: They would have been here by now if they'd _____ the early train.

- A. caught B. catch C. had caught D. catches

Question 25 [573058]: If metal _____ hot, it _____.

- A. gets/expanded B. got/expanded C. gets/expands D. got/would expand

Question 26 [573059]: Pamela wishes her computer _____ broken. She cannot check the email.

- A. wouldn't B. didn't C. weren't D. hadn't

Question 27 [573060]: Look at what they're talking about! I bet they wish they _____ so silly!

- A. won't sound B. didn't sound C. hadn't sounded D. couldn't sound

Question 28 [573061]: If he _____ the President of the USA, he _____ more on education. Unfortunately, he's in prison now.

- A.** is/will focus **B.** were/would focus
C. was/would focused **D.** had been/would have focus

Question 29 [573062]: I'll take cash _____ we need it on the ferry.

- A.** even if **B.** provided that **C.** in case **D.** in case of

Question 30 [573063]: If you see Dora, _____ you give her a message?

- A. will** **B. would** **C. could** **D. do**

Question 31 [573064]: If _____ there, the rice fields could have been more productive.

- A.** had been enough fertilizer **B.** were enough fertilizer
C. is enough fertilizer **D.** have been enough fertilizer

Question 32 [573065]: The road will be much safer, if everyone _____ the rules.

- A. obey** **B. obeys** **C. will obey** **D. obeyed**

Question 33 [573066]: I wish I _____ all the natural and man-made wonder in Vietnam.

- A. can visit** **B. would visit** **C. could visit** **D. will visit**

Question 34 [573067]: Unless you _____ late, you would finish your work.

- A. didn't come B. coming C. to come D. came**

Question 35 [573068]: If we had known your new address, we _____ to see you.

- A. came** **B. will come** **C. would come** **D. would have come**

Question 36 [573069]: _____ I don't arrive till after midnight, will the guesthouse still be open?

- A. As long as** **B. Providing that** **C. Unless** **D. Supposing**

Question **37** [573070]: Sometimes I wish I _____ on Mars.

- A. would live** **B. will live** **C. lived** **D. had lived**

Question 38 [573071]: I wish our neighbors _____ so much noise.

- A.** won't make **B.** doesn't make
C. wouldn't make **D.** couldn't make

Question 39 [573072]: breakdown, please press the alarm button and call this number.

- A.** But for **B.** In case of **C.** So long as **D.** If it weren't for

Question 40 [573073]: I wish I _____ a lot of water last month. I was so shocked after looking at the bill.

- A. didn't use** **B. hadn't used** **C. using** **D. couldn't use**

Exercise 5. Rewrite these following sentences using the conditional sentence.

Tra ID Đề [5143] - Tra ID Video [5144]

Question 1 [573074]: Tommy doesn't have enough money so he can't travel abroad.

→ If

Question 2 [573075]: I don't drive too close to the animals on safari. They don't get scared.

→ If

Question 3 [573076]: I didn't buy it because I didn't have enough money.

→If

Question 4 [573077]: If you are not careful, you will cut yourself with that knife.

→Unless

Question 5 [573078]: Tourists throw litter in the river. The water is polluted.

→If

Question 6 [573079]: It wasn't hot, so we didn't turn on the air conditioner.

→If

Question 7 [573080]: We couldn't make any cakes because Tim didn't come.

→Unless

Question 8 [573081]: I live in countryside, so there's not much to do in the evening.

→If

Question 9 [573082]: If we had more water, our crops would be better.

→Unless

Question 10 [573083]: They are not rich so they cannot buy their dream house.

→If

Exercise 6. Circle the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to the original sentence in each of the following questions.

Tra ID Đè [5145] - Tra ID Video [5146]

Question 1 [573084]: I wish you hadn't drunk that lemonade.

- A. I wish you not to drink that lemonade.
- B. If only you didn't drink that lemonade.
- C. I hope you will not drink that lemonade.
- D. It would be nice if you hadn't drunk that lemonade.

Question 2 [573085]: I did not see Poppy off at the airport. It was so regretful!

- A. I wish I could see Poppy off at the airport.
- B. I wish I saw Poppy off at the airport.
- C. I wish I had seen Poppy off at the airport.
- D. I wish I haven't seen Poppy at the airport.

Question 3 [573086]: We were still alive after the accident because we wore life jackets.

- A. If we didn't wear life jackets, we wouldn't be alive.
- B. Unless we had worn the life jackets, we wouldn't have been alive.
- C. Unless we hadn't worn the life jackets, we wouldn't have been alive.
- D. If we didn't wear life jackets, we would be alive.

Question 4 [573087]: You drink too much coffee, that's why you can't sleep.

- A. If you drank less coffee, you would be able to sleep.
- B. You drink a lot of coffee, and you can sleep.

C. You would sleep well if you didn't drink any coffee.

D. You can sleep better without coffee.

Question 5 [573088]: Ann is obese because she eats so much junk food.

A. If Ann doesn't eat so much junk food, she will not be obese.

B. Ann is obese though she eats so much junk food.

C. Being fat, Ann eats so much junk food.

D. If Ann didn't eat so much junk food, she would not be obese.

Question 6 [573089]: Linda regretted not taking that opportunity.

A. Linda wished she had taken that opportunity.

B. Linda wished she took that opportunity.

C. Linda wished she could taken that opportunity.

D. Linda wished she hadn't taken that opportunity.

Question 7 [573090]: Work harder or you will fail the exam.

A. You will fail the exam if you work harder.

B. If you work harder, you won't pass the exam.

C. You won't fail the exam if you don't work harder.

D. If you don't work harder, you will fail the exam.

Question 8 [573091]: We must go early or else we won't have a seat.

A. If we didn't go early, we wouldn't have a seat.

B. If we go early, we won't have a seat.

C. Unless we go early, we won't have a seat.

D. Unless we went early, we wouldn't have a seat

Question 9 [573092]: But for electricity, our electronic devices wouldn't work.

A. Our electronic devices will not work without electricity.

B. Our electronic devices do not work if there is no electricity.

C. If electricity no longer exists, our electricity would not either.

D. If there were no electricity, our electronic devices wouldn't work.

Question 10 [573093]: Pamela is too busy to go to Salim's birthday party.

A. If Pamela isn't busy, she will go to Salim's birthday party.

B. Unless Pamela were busy, she would go to Salim's birthday party.

C. Pamela were very busy; however, she went to Salim's birthday party.

D. Unless Pamela hadn't been busy, she would have gone to the birthday party.

Chuyên đề X CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT

REPORTED SPEECH

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Câu tường thuật (*câu gián tiếp*) là loại câu dùng để thuật lại lời nói hoặc ý của một người.

I. CÁC BƯỚC LÀM CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT CƠ BẢN

Với các câu tường thuật thường dùng, chúng ta có những bước sau đây để chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

1. Lùi thì

Câu trực tiếp	Câu tường thuật	
Thì hiện tại đơn (am/is/are)/(V _{s/es/inf})	<u>Thì quá khứ đơn</u> (was/were)/(V-ed)	
<u>Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn</u> (am/is/are + V-ing)	<u>Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn</u> (was/were + V-ing)	
Thì quá khứ đơn (was/were)/(V-ed)	<u>Thì quá khứ hoàn thành</u> (had + P2)	
Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn (was/were + V-ing)	Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn (had been + V-ing)	
<u>Thì hiện tại hoàn thành</u> (have/has + P ₂)	Thì quá khứ hoàn thành (had + P2)	
<u>Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn</u> (have/has + been + V-ing)	Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn (had been + V-ing)	
Thì quá khứ hoàn thành (had + P ₂)	Thì quá khứ hoàn thành (Không thể lùi thì thêm)	
Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn (had been + V-ing)	(had + P2)	
<u>Thì tương lai đơn</u> (will + V-inf)	Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn (Không thể lùi thì thêm) (had been + V-ing)	
Thì tương lai tiếp diễn (will be + V-ing)	Tương lai đơn trong quá khứ (would + V-inf)	
Tương lai gần (am/is/are going to + V-inf)	Tương lai tiếp diễn trong quá khứ (would be + V-ing)	
Động từ khuyết thiếu	can	could
	may	might
	must/have to	had to
	need	needed
	should/would/could	Giữ nguyên

	might/ought to/used to	
Câu điều kiện loại 1		Câu điều kiện loại 2
Câu điều kiện loại 2, 3/Câu ước		Giữ nguyên

★ **Lưu ý: Một số trường hợp không lùi thì trong câu tường thuật**

- + Động từ tường thuật được chia ở thì hiện tại hoặc tương lai.
- + Câu nói trực tiếp là một chân lí, sự thật hiển nhiên.
- + Mệnh đề wish/would rather
- + Kết hợp thì ở câu trực tiếp: quá khứ đơn và quá khứ tiếp diễn, quá khứ đơn và quá khứ hoàn thành.
- + Có thời gian cụ thể ở câu trực tiếp

2. Đổi ngôi, chủ ngữ, tân ngữ, tính từ sở hữu, đại từ sở hữu

Khi đổi những yếu tố trên, các bạn cần dựa vào ngữ cảnh của câu để tìm ra sự thay đổi phù hợp.

Câu trực tiếp	Câu tường thuật
I	He/She
You	He/She
We	They
They	They
Me	Him/Her
Us	Them
My	His/Her
Our	Their
Mine	Hers, his
Yours	Her, his, their, my
Myself	Herself, himself
Yourself	Herself, himself, myself
Ourselves	Themselves

3. Đổi trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn

Câu trực tiếp	Câu tường thuật
Here	There
Now	Then/At that moment
Today/Tonight	That day/That night
Tomorrow	The next day
Next week	The following week/The week after
Yesterday	The previous day/The day before
Last week	The previous week/The week before
Ago	Before

This	That
These	Those

II. CÁC DẠNG CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT

1. Câu tường thuật dạng câu kể

Các động từ tường thuật hay gặp: told, said

$$S + V_{\text{tường thuật}} + (O) + (\text{that}) + S + V$$

Ví dụ:

Charlie said, "I'm thinking of going to live in Canada."

→ Charlie said that he was thinking of going to live in Canada. (*Charlie nói rằng anh ấy đang nghĩ về việc chuyển đến sống ở Canada.*)

2. Câu tường thuật dạng câu hỏi

Các động từ tường thuật hay gặp: asked, wanted to know, wondered

➤ Câu hỏi Yes/No

$$S + V_{\text{tường thuật}} + (O) + (\text{that}) + \text{if/whether} + S + V$$

Ví dụ:

Peter asked me, "Will you go tonight?"

→ Peter asked me if I would go that night.

➤ Câu hỏi Wh-

$$S + V_{\text{tường thuật}} + (O) + (\text{that}) + \text{Wh-} + S + V$$

Ví dụ:

"Where did you go last night?" my mom asked.

→ My mom asked me where I had gone the night before.

3. Câu mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu

Các động từ tường thuật hay gặp: told, asked

$$S + V_{\text{tường thuật}} + (O) + (\text{not}) \text{to} + V$$

Ví dụ:

"Please keep quiet." our teacher said.

→ Our teacher asked US to keep quiet.

John said, "Don't be silly."

→ John told me not to be silly.

4. Các câu tường thuật với động từ tường thuật đặc biệt

Mỗi câu nói đều mang một hàm ý khác nhau, chúng ta dùng các động từ tường thuật khác nhau để biểu lộ ý nghĩa của câu trực tiếp sát nghĩa nhất.

Ý nghĩa	Cấu trúc
Động từ đi với to V	
Mời	invite sb + to V

Khuyên nhủ	advise sb + to V
Hứa	promise (sb) + to V
Khuyến khích	encourage sb + to V
Từ chối	refuse + to V
Cảnh báo	warn sb + to V
Nhắc nhở	remind sb to V
Động từ đi với V-ing	
Ngăn cản/ngăn chặn	prevent sb from V-ing
Xin lỗi	apologize for + V-ing
Chúc mừng	congratulate sb on + V-ing
Khăng khăng	insist on + V-ing
Khen	compliment sb on + V-ing
Đổ lỗi	blame sb for + V-ing
Buộc tội	accuse sb of + V-ing
Cảm ơn	thank sb for + V-ing
Thừa nhận	admit + V-ing
Chối bỏ/phủ nhận	deny + V-ing
Gợi ý	suggest + V-ing

Ví dụ:

+ “You should go to the dentist.” Linda told me

→ Linda advised me to go to the dentist. (*Linda khuyên tôi đến gặp bác sĩ.*)

+ “Would you like to go out for a drink?” He said to her

→ He invited her to go out for a drink. (*Anh mời cô ay ra ngoài uống nước.*)

+ “I’m sorry because I’m late for the meeting.” Belle said.

→ Belle apologized for being late. (*Belle xin lỗi vì đến muộn.*)

+ “I didn’t steal your bike.” He said to me

→ He denied stealing my bike.

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Rewrite these sentences into reported speech in the form of statements.

Tra ID Đề [5148] - Tra ID Video [5149]

Question 1 [573094]: He said, "They are going to visit us next week."

→

Question 2 [573095]: They said, "We have moved to a new house."

→

Question 3 [573096]: "I'm not sure if I can attend the meeting tomorrow." She said.

→

Question 4 [573097]: Tom said, "I was told to be at the meeting at 7 o'clock yesterday."

→

Question 5 [573098]: Maya told US "My parents are very proud of my good marks."

→

Question 6 [573099]: The teacher said, "All the homework must be done carefully."

→

Question 7 [573100]: "We are going to host a charity event next month." she said

→

Question 8 [573101]: The boys said, "We have to try our best to win this match."

→

Question 9 [573102]: His dad told him "You cannot use my computer today."

→

Question 10 [573103]: Her classmates said, "Alice is the most intelligent student in our school."

→

Exercise 2. Rewrite these sentences using reported speech in the form of YES/NO questions or WH- questions.

Tra ID Đề [5150] - Tra ID Video [5151]

Question 1 [573104]: "What time does the train leave?" she asked.

→

Question 2 [573105]: "Have you finished your homework?" he wondered.

→

Question 3 [573106]: "Why didn't you tell me about this earlier?" Paula asked me.

→

Question 4 [573107]: "Where are you going on vacation?" they asked Lola.

→

Question 5 [573108]: "How did you solve that problem?" he asked.

→

Question 6 [573109]: "Will you be attending the meeting tomorrow?" she wanted to know.

→

Question 7 [573110]: "Did you enjoy the concert?" he asked.

→

Question 8 [573111]: "How long have you been waiting?" Kevin asked Sarah.

→

Question 9 [573112]: "Where can I find a good restaurant around here?" they asked.

→

Question 10. [573113]: "Have you seen my keys anywhere?" he wanted to know.

→

Exercise 3. Rewrite these sentences into reported speech in the form of imperative clause (câu mệnh lệnh.)

Tra IDĐề [5152] - Tra ID Video [5153]

Question 1 [573114]: "Close the window," she said.

→

Question 2 [573115]: "Do your homework now," he told me.

→

Question 3 [573116]: "Stand up straight," the teacher said.

→

Question 4 [573117]: "Don't touch that frog" she said to her friends.

→

Question 5 [573118]: "Please be quiet, everyone" he said.

→

Question 6 [573119]: "Turn off your phone and turn on the laptop," she said.

→

Question 7 [573120]: "Clean your room," their mother said.

→

Question 8 [573121]: "Wait here until I come back." my brother told me.

→

Question 9 [573122]: "Give me some lemonade, please" the girl said to the waiter.

→

Question 10 [573123]: “Don’t eat too much sugary food.” my nutritionist said

Exercise 4. Rewrite these sentences into reported speech with suitable reported verbs.

Tra ID Đề [5154] - Tra ID Video [5155]

Question 1 [573124]: “If I were you, I would turn down that job.” She said to me (ADVISED)

→

Question 2 [573125]: “I’ll water the flowers before you come” George told me (PROMISED)

→

Question 3 [573126]: “Would you like to have dinner with me on Tuesday?” He said to me. (INVITED)

→

Question 4 [573127]: “Why don’t you go by train? It’s much less tiring than driving, “I said. (SUGGESTED)

→

Question 5 [573128]: “Don’t step on the grass.” the guard said. (WARNED)

→

Question 6 [573129]: “You’d better drink enough 2 liters of water a day.” The doctor told him (ADVISED)

→

Question 7 [573130]: “You broke the vase!” Kevin said to Lily (ACCUSED)

→

Question 8 [573131]: “Try your best!” my teacher said to me (ENCOURAGED)

→

Question 9 [573132]: “I’m sorry. I forgot my assignments at home.” (ADMIT)

→

Question 10 [573133]: “No, we didn’t make noise last night” said the children (DENIED)

→

Exercise 6. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Question 1 [573134]: He asked me _____ swim.

- A. that I can B. if I can C. that I could D. if I could

Question 2 [573135]: Sarah said that she _____ to the concert the previous night.

- A. will go B. goes C. went D. had gone

Question 3 [573136]: They said that they _____ the project by Friday.

- A. would finish B. finished
C. would have finished D. finish

Question 4 [573137]: The guest told the host that _____.

- A. I must go now B. he must go then
C. he had to go now D. he had to go then

Question 5 [573138]: The students asked if Ms. Yuuki was going to teach them literature _____.

- A. the next day B. the previous day
C. the before day D. the day following

Question 6 [573139]: Michael said that if he _____ you, he _____ daisy in the garden.

- A. is/will grow B. were/would grow
C. had been/would have grown D. was/will grow

Question 7 [573140]: He asked _____ him some money.

- A. her to lend B. she to lend C. if she has lent D. she lends

Question 8 [573141]: Peter wonders why they _____ durian that much.

- A. liked B. like C. have liked D. likes

Question 9 [573142]: Chris wanted to know where his bike _____ the week before.

- A. is B. will be C. was D. had been

Question 10 [573143]: Jack asked me _____ in English.

- A. what does this word mean B. what that word means
C. what did this word mean D. what that word meant

Question 11 [573144]: The waitress asked Peter _____ tea or coffee.

- A. whether he preferred B. that he preferred
C. did he prefer D. if he prefers

Question 12 [573145]: He said the sun _____ in the West.

- A. is setting B. set C. sets D. had set

Question 13 [573146]: The teacher asked her pupils _____ too much noise in the class.

- A. not to make B. not making C. didn't make D. don't make

Question 14 [573147]: Jennie told me that she _____ her homework for the exam the _____.

- A. had done/following day B. will do/previous day
C. would do/following day D. was going/previous day

Question 15 [573148]: Most students said that the English test _____ the most difficult.

- A. is B. was C. will be D. have been

Question 16 [573149]: They apologized _____ so late.

- A. for picking me up B. to pick me up
C. on picking me up D. to me of picking up

Question 17 [573150]: Giselle reminded me "_____"

- A. Don't forget to bring an umbrella. B. I remember to bring an umbrella.
C. I don't forget bringing the umbrella. D. If I were you, I would bring an umbrella.

Question 18 [573151]: Stephen _____ me that he needed 4 oranges.

- A. told to B. said C. told D. spoke

Question 19 [573152]: The woman asked the girls _____.

- A. why are they fighting then B. why were they fighting now
C. why they were fighting now D. why they were fighting then

Question 20 [573153]: Lucy asked Tom.

- A. if he likes hiking B. whether does he like hiking
C. whether did he like hiking D. if he liked hiking

Question 21 [573154]: Loren said she had launched the campaign since _____.

- A. yesterday B. two days ago C. the day before D. the next day

Question 22 [573155]: They said they _____ for 5 years.

- A. have worked B. had been working
C. worked D. would work

Question 23 [573156]: "I cheated in my exam" Max _____.

- A. accused B. advised C. admitted D. blamed

Question 24 [573157]: I asked them _____.

- A. who came to meet them at the airport
B. who had came to meet them at the airport
C. who came to met them at the airport

D. who had come to met them at the airport

Question 25 [573158]: She said that while she was watching TV, a mouse _____ across.

- A.** run **B.** ran **C.** had run **D.** runs

Question 26 [573159]: He says if he _____ the train now, he _____ the next one.

- A.** misses/would catch **B.** missed/would catch
C. had missed/would have caught **D.** missed/caught

Question 27 [573160]: The guard warned them _____ on the grass.

- A.** didn't step **B.** not step **C.** to not step **D.** not to step

Question 28 [573161]: She said she _____ her room the following month.

- A.** have to decorate **B.** would have to decorate
C. had to decorate **D.** would had to decorate

Question 29 [573162]: John asked me how long I _____ a musician.

- A.** was **B.** had been **C.** would be **D.** am

Question 30 [573163]: The detective asked us _____ the accident.

- A.** whether any of us had witnessed **B.** if any of we witnessed
C. whether any of us witness **D.** if any of us would witness

Exercise 6. Circle the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to the original sentence in each of the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5158] - Tra ID Video [5159]

Question 1 [573164]: "Don't forget to brush your teeth," said Mommy to Lily.

- A.** Mommy told Lily not forget to brush her teeth.
B. Mommy told Lily not to forget to brush her teeth.
C. Mommy told Lily to not forget to brush her teeth.
D. Mommy said Lily not to forget to brush her teeth.

Question 2 [573165]: "You'd better tidy your room." said my mother.

- A.** My mother advised me to tidy my room.
B. My mother suggested me to tidy my room.
C. My mother suggested tidying my room.
D. My mother warned me to tidy my room.

Question 3 [573166]: "I'll give the book back tomorrow." he said.

- A.** He invited to give the book back tomorrow.
B. He suggested giving the book back the following day.
C. He promised to give the book back the following day.
D. He said he would given the book back the following day.

Question 4 [573167]: "You took the money from my purse." Mrs. Stark said.

- A.** Mrs. Stark blamed for me taking the money from her purse.

- B. Mrs. Stark accused me of taking the money from her purse.
- C. Mrs. Stark suggested me taking the money from her purse.
- D. Mrs. Stark said that I took the money from her purse.

Question 5 [573168]: “Let’s go on a walking holiday.” said Ben.

- A. Ben allowed us to go on a walking holiday.
- B. Ben invited us to go on a walking holiday.
- C. Ben suggested going on a walking holiday.
- D. Ben encouraged us to go on a walking holiday.

Question 6 [573169]: “You should take a break!” said Matthew.

- A. Matthew said that you should take a break.
- B. Matthew wants me to take a break.
- C. Matthew advised me to take a break.
- D. Matthew told me that he should take a break.

Question 7 [573170]: “Don’t leave the room until you finish your homework.” said my dad.

- A. My Dad told me to leave the room until I finish my homework.
- B. My Dad asked me if I didn’t leave the room until I finished my homework.
- C. My Dad told me to not leave the room until I finish my homework.
- D. My Dad told me not to leave the room until I finished my homework.

Question 8 [573171]: “How long will the journey take?” Jean asked.

- A. Jean wanted to know how long would the journey take.
- B. Jean asked if how long the journey would take.
- C. Jean asked how long the journey would take.
- D. Jean wanted to know how long will the journey take.

Question 9 [573172]: “Please remember to switch off the lights!” our teacher said.

- A. Our teacher promised US to switch off the lights.
- B. Our teacher reminded US to switch off the lights.
- C. Our teacher reminded US of switching of the lights.
- D. Our teacher offer US to switch of the lights.

Question 10 [573173]: “You finished the task! Well-done!” said his family.

- A. His family encourage him to finish the task.
- B. His family congratulated him on finishing the task.
- C. His family said that they had finished the task.
- D. His family blamed him for finishing the task.

Topic 5

JOB AND CAREER

1. TỔNG HỢP TỪ VỰNG CẦN NHỚ

STT	Từ	Từ loại	Nghĩa
1	academic	adj	(tính) học thuật
2	achieve	v	đạt được
	achievement	n	thành tựu
3	apply	v	ứng tuyển
	applicant	n	ứng viên
	application	n	sự ứng tuyển, xin việc
4	apprenticeship	n	thời gian học nghề
5	arts and crafts	np	thủ công mỹ nghệ
6	assembly worker	np	công nhân dây chuyền
7	astronaut	n	phi hành gia
8	audience	n	khán giả
9	bonus	n	tiền thưởng
10	calm	adj	bình tĩnh
11	candidate	n	ứng viên
12	career	n	sự nghiệp
13	cashier	n	người thu ngân
14	certificate	n	chứng chỉ
15	collaborate	v	cộng tác
16	college	n	đại học, cao đẳng
17	complain	v	phàn nàn
18	compliment	n	lời khen
19	coordination	n	sự phối hợp
20	creative	adj	sáng tạo
	creativity	n	sự sáng tạo
21	customer	n	khách hàng
22	decide	v	quyết định
	decision	n	quyết định
	decisive	adj	quyết đoán
23	demand	v	yêu cầu
	demanding	adj	đòi hỏi (cao)
24	earn a living	phr	kiếm sống

25	employer	n	người chủ, người thuê
26	engineer	n	kỹ sư
27	equipment	n	trang thiết bị
28	expect	v	mong đợi
29	flight attendant	np	tiếp viên hàng không
30	formal training	np	đào tạo chính quy
31	garment worker	np	công nhân may
32	hands-on	adj	thực hành
33	honest	adj	thành thật
	honesty	n	sự thành thật, trung thực
34	income	n	thu nhập
35	informative	adj	chứa nhiều thông tin
36	innovation	n	sự đổi mới
37	interpreter	n	phiên dịch viên
38	lifeguard	n	vệ sĩ/cứu hộ biển
39	mechanic	n	thợ cơ khí
40	medicine	n	y khoa/thuốc
	medical	adj	(thuộc) y khoa
41	orientation	n	định hướng
42	passion	n	đam mê
43	patient	adj	kiên nhẫn
44	personal	adj	(thuộc) cá nhân
	personalize	v	cá nhân hóa
45	plumber	n	thợ sửa ống nước
46	polite	adj	lịch sự
47	position	n	vị trí
48	problem-solving	n	giải quyết vấn đề
49	professional	adj	chuyên nghiệp
50	psychologist	n	nhà tâm lý học
51	punctual	adj	đúng giờ
52	qualification	n	bằng cấp
53	realistic	adj	hiện thực
54	reasonable	adj	hợp lý
55	receipt	n	hóa đơn
56	repetitive	adj	(tính) lặp đi lặp lại
57	require	v	yêu cầu

	requirement	n	yêu cầu
58	research	v	ngiên cứu
59	shy	adj	ngại ngùng
60	sociable	adj	hòa đồng
61	software	n	phần mềm
62	supportive	adj	giúp đỡ, ủng hộ
63	surgeon	n	bác sĩ phẫu thuật
	surgery	n	cuộc phẫu thuật
64	tailor	n	thợ may
65	technician	n	kỹ thuật viên
66	temporary	adj	tạm thời
	>< permanent	adj	vĩnh viễn
67	vaccine	n	vắc-xin
68	vet (veterinarian)	n	bác sĩ thú y
69	virtual reality	np	thực tế ảo
70	vocational	adj	(thuộc) thực hành nghề
71	well-paid	adj	được trả lương cao
	>< low-paid	adj	>< được trả lương thấp

2. TỔNG HỢP CẤU TRÚC CẦN NHỚ

STT	Cụm	Nghĩa
1	aim + to V	nhằm làm gì
2	apply for sth	ứng tuyển cho
3	be in charge of sth/V-ing	chịu trách nhiệm cho
4	be willing to + V	sẵn sàng làm
5	dream of + V-ing	mơ về
6	hang out with sb	đi chơi với ai
7	keep an eye on sb/sth	để mắt/ trông chừng ai
8	look after	chăm sóc
9	think outside the box	nghĩ sáng tạo, vượt khỏi khuôn khổ
10	worry about	lo lắng về
11	aim + to V	nhằm làm gì
12	apply for sth	ứng tuyển cho
13	be in charge of sth/V-ing	chịu trách nhiệm cho

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5163] - Tra ID Video [5164]

Question 1 [574166]: In the clothing industry, a _____ is someone who works in the production of clothing items like sewing the buttons onto the shirts in the factory.

- A. fashion designer B. garment worker C. mechanic D. engineer

Question 2 [574167]: Before entering university, students often attend career _____ sessions to explore different jobs and career paths.

- A. academic B. presentation C. orientation D. path

Question 3 [574168]: Customers often _____ about poor service or product quality to managers.

- A. compliment B. critique C. listen D. complain

Question 4 [574169]: Sarah is extremely _____, always eager to take part in conversations and make new friends.

- A. introverted B. polite C. sociable D. honest

Question 5 [574170]: In group projects, _____ skills to analyze challenges are important for overcoming them.

- A. leadership B. time management
C. problem-solving D. communication

Question 6 [574171]: This fair provides _____ opportunities for students to explore many options with potential employers.

- A. job B. education C. hobby D. career

Question 7 [574172]: Jane is known for always being _____, never arriving late to appointments or meetings.

- A. flexible B. punctual C. organized D. patient

Question 8 [574173]: Submitting a resume and cover letter is a common _____ when applying for a job.

- A. choice B. suggestion C. requirement D. option

Question 9 [574174]: Your _____ is the money you receive regularly, usually from work and other business.

- A. savings B. salary C. income D. profit

Question 10 [574175]: In assembly line work, workers often do _____ tasks to ensure the production process runs smoothly.

- A. complex B. creative C. repetitive D. varied

Question 11 [574176]: Improving _____ can increase your ability to catch, throw, and hit things accurately.

- A. balance B. speed
C. hand-eye coordination D. flexibility

Question 12 [574177]: Remember to keep your _____ on your luggage while you're waiting at the

airport.

A. eye B. mouth C. hand D. finger

Question 13 [574178]: After years of hard work, she finally got a _____ position in the company.

A. repetitive B. demanding C. well-paid D. challenging

Question 14 [574179]: To achieve success in the project, it's essential for team members to _____ effectively.

A. compete B. require C. complement D. collaborate

Question 15 [574180]: The workshop gives participants a chance to get _____ experience in the field of robotics, which they do not do in the classroom.

A. theoretical B. academic C. hands-on D. temporary

Question 16 [574181]: The job requires candidates who can do _____ tasks and work well under pressure.

A. repetitive B. leisurely C. demanding D. relaxed

Question 17 [574182]: The teacher always sets _____ deadlines for students to study efficiently.

A. strict_ B. permanent C. reasonable D. patient

Question 18 [574183]: To achieve the job, Mark must _____ it before the deadline.

A. look after B. apply for C. worry about D. attend to

Question 19 [574184]: The company is hiring a new _____ to repair and maintain electronic equipment.

A. mechanic B. technician C. accountant D. tailor

Question 20 [574185]: When applying for a job, it's important to understand what employers _____ from potential candidates.

A. demand B. expect C. complain D. dream

Question 21 [574186]: The artists' _____ is the way they make new ideas in their work, experimenting with new techniques and materials.

A. honesty B. politeness C. creativity D. responsibility

Question 22 [574187]: Parents have the responsibility to _____ their children's well-being and provide for their needs.

A. care with B. look after C. give up D. run out

Question 23 [574188]: The skilled _____ performed the surgery with precision and care.

A. doctor B. surgeon C. Nurse D. dentist

Question 24 [574189]: To become a doctor, one must undergo years of strict _____ training.

A. dental B. medical C. engineering D. cooking

Question 25 [574190]: Doctors must show understanding towards each _____ they treat.

A. student B. customer C. patient D. nurse

Question 26 [574191]: The _____ teacher calmly explained the lessons to struggling students.

A. personal B. patient C. shy D. strict

Question 27 [574192]: Despite the long wait, the customer did not _____ about the service.

A. expect B. complain C. compliment D. apologize

Question 28 [574193]: To create innovation, companies encourage employees to _____ and explore new ideas.

A. stay within limits B. think inside the box
C. think outside the box D. follow traditional methods

Question 29 [574194]: The professor's _____ achievements earned him recognition in his field.

A. vocational B. academic C. demanding D. temporary

Question 30 [574195]: When I have free time, I love to _____ my friends at the local café.

A. run into B. hang out with C. look forward to D. keep an eye on

Exercise 2. Match the sentence halves.

Tra ID ĐỀ [5165] - Tra ID Video [5166]

1. Qualifications are important for	a. build trust with co-workers and employers.
2. Career means	b. rewarded for good performance or achieving goals at work.
3. An opportunity to earn a higher income is	c. opening your business network.
4. Hands-on experience helps in	d. the job or series of jobs that you do during your working life
5. Being honest in your work can	e. meeting the requirements for a particular job or position.
6. A bonus is an amount of money	f. achieving practical skills and knowledge in a field.

Exercise 3. Rewrite the following sentences by using the word in the brackets.

Tra ID ĐỀ [5167] - Tra ID Video [5168]

Question 1 [574196]: Traveling the world was always her dream. **(OF)**

→ She

Question 2 [574197]: To solve the problem, try thinking creatively. **(BOX)**

→ You should

Question 3 [574198]: It's time to decide which college to attend. **(DECISION)**

→ It's time to

Question 4 [574199]: I need to make enough money to take care of my family. **(AFTER)**

→ I have

Question 5 [574200]: Despite his busy schedule, he was ready to help with the project. **(WILLING)**

→ He was

Question 6 [574201]: Sarah takes responsibility for organizing the event. **(CHARGE)**

→ Sarah

Question 7 [574202]: Could you watch my dog while I go to the store? **(EYE)**

→ Could

Question 8 [574203]: Please don't stress about the dishes; I'll wash them after dinner. **(WORRY)**

Exercise 4. Fill in the blanks in the dialogue with the words in the box.

Tra ID Đề [5169] -Tra ID Video [5170]

Dialogue 1

<i>expect</i>	<i>salary</i>	<i>career</i>
<i>requirements</i>	<i>bonus</i>	<i>personalized</i>

A: Welcome! Why are you interested in the (1) _____ being a cashier?

B: I enjoy customer service and believe it's good for my skills. I'm familiar with sales equipment.

A: How would you provide a (2) _____ shopping experience?

B: By providing excellent service, greeting warmly, and meeting customer needs.

A: Can you work evenings and weekends as required?

B: Yes, I'm flexible and can meet the (3) _____.

A: Any questions?

B: Yes, what about the (4) _____?

A: The rate is 20\$ per hour and we give the excellent cashier (5) _____ each month.

B: Thanks. I (6) _____ to see you at the next round

A: Thanks for applying!

Dialogue 2

<i>opportunities</i>	<i>repetitive</i>	<i>temporary</i>
<i>engineer</i>	<i>patient</i>	<i>success</i>

A: Hello! Why are you interested in this position?

B: I'm an (1) _____ looking for opportunities to apply my skills.

A: Can you share a time when you had to be (2) _____ with your job?

B: Sure, in my previous job, I had to test the quality of our product many times. It was a (3) _____ task.

A: How do you face (4) _____ roles knowing they may not be long-term positions?

B: I see them as (5) _____ to learn new things.

A: What makes you apply for this engineering position?

B: I'm passionate about engineering and eager to contribute to your team's (6) _____.

A: Thanks for your interest. We'll be in touch soon.

B: Thank you! Looking forward to it!

Exercise 5. Write one suitable word in each blank.

Tra ID Đề [5171] - Tra ID Video [5172]

In the world of job and career, it's important to decide (1) _____ choose the right path. It is difficult to compete with a lot of applicants out there. People aim (2) _____ find jobs they're interested (3) _____. They also have to earn a (4) _____ so the salary is also considered. Although it's normal to worry (5) _____ making the right choice, the goal is to find a job that suits you and makes you happy.

Exercise 6. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct arrangement of the sentences to make a meaningful paragraph/letter for the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5173] - Tra ID Video [5174]

Question 1 [581956]:

- a. Many people are struggling with finding their job satisfaction.
- b. Furthermore, some people even switch careers to find more satisfying work.
- c. Second, networking can help people find new job opportunities and bring the firmer balance for work
- d. First, job satisfaction often comes from a good balance between work and personal life.
- e. In short, everyone has different job satisfaction and can only be achieved if you try.
- f. As a result, you cannot be satisfied if one of the two things is having trouble.

A. a-d-c-f-b-e B. a-d-f-c-b-e C. a-c-e-d-b-f D. a-b-c-d-e-f

Question 2 [581957]:

- a. After having a resume, you should network with professionals in your field to gain opportunities.
- b. Hi everyone, today I want to share some tips about job searching and career development with you.
- c. Second, create a reliable resume and cover letter for the jobs you're applying for.
- d. To begin with, identify your career goals and the skills needed to achieve them.
- e. Finally, I hope my sharing today will help you to have better insight about job and career.
- f. Lastly, prepare for interviews by practicing common questions and researching the companies.

A. b-a-d-c-f-e B. b-a-f-d-c-e C. b-d-a-c-d-e D. b-d-c-a-f-e

Question 3 [581958]:

- a. Continuous improvement ensures you remain effective and valuable.
- b. First, listen to and respect your colleagues in order to have a great collaboration.
- c. Last but not least, help others when they need support to build a positive working atmosphere.
- d. Second, take responsibility for your mistakes.
- e. Please note the following things if you are going to have a new working environment.
- f. Additionally, keep learning and improving your skills.

A. b-d-e-f-a-c B. b-f-d-c-a-e C. e-b-d-f-a-c D. e-b-a-d-f-c

Question 4 [581959]:

- a. Your job in this place will be taking care of the elderly and cleaning the garden twice a week.
- b. Contact us on our website or send us your CV to our mailbox.

- c. Besides, you would be expected to work on Saturdays from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.
 d. This job is a great opportunity to gain experience in youth work this summer.
 e. We are looking for a volunteer with work experience to support US at the local nursing home.
 A. d-e-a-c-b B. d-c-a-e-b C. e-d-a-c-b D. d-a-e-c-b

Question 5 [581960]:

- a. I've just landed a new job! I'll be starting as a flight attendant at Vietnam Airlines next month.
 b. Take care and talk soon.
 c. It's a big step for me, and I'm looking forward to the challenges and growth it will bring.
 d. Hi Peter, I hope this letter finds you well!
 e. I'd love to catch up soon and share with you more about it. Let's plan a time to chat or meet up!
 f. I wanted to share some exciting news with you.
 A. d-f-a-c-e-b B. d-e-f-c-a-b C. d-f-c-e-a-b D. d-e-c-f-a-b

Chuyên đề XI CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI

TAG QUESTION

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Câu hỏi đuôi là dạng câu hỏi ngắn ở cuối câu dùng để xác minh thông tin là đúng hay không.

S + V, to be/trợ động từ/động từ khuyết thiếu?

I. QUY TẮC THÀNH LẬP CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI

1. Nếu mệnh đề chính mang tính khẳng định thì câu hỏi đuôi ở dạng phủ định và ngược lại, nếu mệnh đề chính ở dạng phủ định (có not hoặc từ phủ định) thì câu hỏi đuôi ở dạng khẳng định.

Ví dụ:

You are a doctor, aren't you? (*Bạn là một bác sĩ có phải không?*)

K.định P.định

He didn't play tennis, did he? (*Anh ta đã không chơi tennis có phải không?*)

P. định K.định

2. Câu hỏi đuôi dùng to be, trợ động từ hoặc động từ khuyết thiếu và thì tương ứng với mệnh đề chính.

Ví dụ:

He has opened the room, hasn't he?

Thì HTHT lấy bằng trợ động từ "has"

★ **Lưu ý:** Phần câu hỏi đuôi luôn luôn được viết tắt khi ở dạng phủ định

She often comes late, does not she? ☒

She often comes late, doesn't she? ☒

II. MỘT SỐ TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐẶC BIỆT CẦN LƯU Ý

1. Các từ sau mang tính chất phủ định: never, seldom, hardly ever, rarely, barely, scarcely, ...

Ví dụ: Tom barely has dinner at home, does he?

p.định

K.dinh

2. Láy đuôi của câu mệnh lệnh (câu không có chủ ngữ) là will you.

Ví dụ: Open the door, will you? (*Vui lòng mở cửa được chứ?*)

3. Láy đuôi của let's (câu rủ) là shall we.

Ví dụ: Let's find something to drink, shall we? (*Hãy tìm gì đó uống nhé?*)

4. Câu hỏi đuôi của I am là aren't I.

Ví dụ: I am an architect, aren't I? (*Tôi là một kiến trúc sư có phải không?*)

5. Láy đuôi của đại từ bất định chỉ người: everyone/everybody, no one/nobody, anyone/anybody, someone/somebody dùng **chủ ngữ they**.

Ví dụ: Everyone in the room brings a lunchbox, don't they?

6. Láy đuôi của đại từ bất định chỉ vật: everything, nothing, anything, something dùng chủ ngữ **it**.

Ví dụ: Everything is ok, isn't it?

7. Láy đuôi của must

➤ Khi chỉ sự cần thiết phải làm gì, láy bằng needn't

Ví dụ: You must finish your homework, needn't you? (*Bạn phải làm bài tập về nhà phải không?*)

➤ Khi chỉ sự cảm đoán (musn't), láy bằng must

Ví dụ: You mustn't go home after 10 pm, must you? (*Bạn không được về nhà sau 10 giờ tối.*)

➤ Khi dự đoán ở hiện tại, láy theo động từ sau must.

Ví dụ: You must be a celebrity, aren't you? (*Bạn chắc hẳn là một người nổi tiếng.*)

8. Láy đuôi của ought to là shouldn't

Ví dụ: He ought to see this cat, shouldn't he? (*Anh ta nên xem con mèo này có phải không?*)

9. Láy đuôi của need

➤ Khi need làm động từ thường: need to V, láy bằng trợ động từ tương ứng.

Ví dụ: Police needed to find the robber, didn't they? (*Cảnh sát đã cần tìm tên cướp phải không?*)

➤ Khi need làm động từ khuyết thiếu, láy bằng need

Ví dụ: Lan needn't do homework, need she? (*Lan không cần làm bài tập phải không?*)

10. Cấu trúc I + think/believe/expect/feel/... that + s + V

➤ Tính khẳng định phủ định xét theo mệnh đề I think/believe, ...

➤ Chủ ngữ và to be/trợ động từ xét theo mệnh đề S + V đằng sau.

Ví dụ: I believe chickens cannot run very fast, can't they?

I don't think we should use fossil fuel, should we?

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5176] - Tra ID Video [5177]

Question 1 [573174]: Ha Noi was named Thang Long, _____?

A. didn't it B. was it C. doesn't it D. wasn't it

Question 2 [573175]: John won't be late again, _____?

A. will he B. won't he C. doesn't he D. does he

Question 3 [573176]: She's been to Paris before, _____?

A. hasn't she B. has she C. isn't she D. wasn't she

Question 4 [573177]: They never forget your birthday, _____?

A. do they B. don't they C. did they D. didn't they

Question 5 [573178]: We couldn't solve the problem, _____?

A. could we B. couldn't we C. can we D. can't we

Question 6 [573179]: You had already visited Italy before, _____?

A. hadn't you B. had you C. did you D. didn't you

Question 7 [573180]: Tina seldom goes out alone at night, _____?

A. does she B. doesn't she C. did she D. didn't she

Question 8 [573181]: There's no need to worry about it, _____?

A. is there B. isn't there C. was there D. wasn't there

Question 9 [573182]: Don't shout, _____? I can hear you perfectly well.

A. do you B. won't you C. will you D. don't you

Question 10 [573183]: Martin used to live in Oxford, _____?

A. was he B. wasn't he C. did he D. didn't he

Question 11 [573184]: They've waited a long time, _____?

A. haven't they B. have they C. don't they D. do they

Question 12 [573185]: It's a beautiful day, _____?

A. isn't it B. isn't he C. wasn't it D. wasn't he

Question 13 [573186]: You needn't worry about the presentation, _____?

A. need you B. needn't you C. did you D. didn't you

Question 14 [573187]: He seldom makes mistakes in his calculations, _____?

A. does he B. doesn't he C. did he D. didn't he

Question 15 [573188]: We're going to pay a visit to the National Zoo, _____?

A. do we B. don't we C. are we D. aren't we

Question 16 [573189]: Someone comes to visit us soon, _____?

A. doesn't he B. hasn't he C. haven't they D. don't they

Question 17 [573190]: It rained heavily last night, _____?

A. did it B. doesn't it C. didn't it D. does it

Question 18 [573191]: Mike has attended over 12 meetings so far, _____?

A. hasn't he B. does he C. doesn't he D. has he

Question 19 [573192]: Paul has three apples and a bar of chocolate, _____?

A. hasn't he B. does he C. doesn't he D. has he

Question 20 [573193]: Let's go camping this weekend, _____?

A. will you B. isn't we C. shall we D. doesn't it

Question 21 [573194]: What a lovely teddy bear, _____?

A. is it B. isn't it C. does it D. doesn't it

Question 22 [573195]: No one in the group has visited Vietnam, _____?

A. haven't they B. hasn't they C. doesn't it D. don't they

Question 23 [573196]: Rememer to drink 2 liters of water a day, _____?

A. will you B. won't you C. don't you D. do you

Question 24 [573197]: What I want is a glass of cold beer, _____?

A. is it B. don't I C. do I D. isn't

Question 25 [573198]: I am wrong, _____?

A. am not I B. amn't I C. are I D. aren't I

Question 26 [573199]: Everybody has to wear uniform to school, _____?

A. hasn't it B. don't they C. haven't they D. has it

Question 27 [573200]: You have fish and chips for lunch, _____?

A. do you B. don't you C. will you D. won't you

Question 28 [573201]: Lisa must be a talented idol, _____?

A. mustn't she B. needn't she C. don't she D. isn't she

Question 29 [573202]: I think that she's a very selfish person, _____?

A. doesn't she B. isn't she C. don't I D. is she

Question 30 [573203]: You and I could have given him a hand, _____?

A. can I B. could we C. couldn't I D. couldn't we

Question 31 [573204]: The children are playing tennis excitedly in the garden, _____?

A. are we B. aren't we C. aren't they D. are not they

Question 32 [573205]: These flowers look extremely lovely, _____?

A. don't these B. aren't these C. don't they D. aren't these

Question 33 [573206]: I wish I could be a millionaire, _____?

A. couldn't I B. shall we C. will I D. may I

Question 34 [573207]: *Blackpink* is the most famous girl group nowadays, _____?

A. isn't it B. is it C. are they D. aren't they

Question 35 [573208]: I believe he will come here, _____?

A. will he B. won't he C. won't I D. don't I

Question 36 [573209]: We should follow the traffic rules strictly, _____?

A. shall we B. shouldn't we C. don't we D. should we

Question 37 [573210]: Something's at the door, _____?

A. is it B. doesn't they C. doesn't it D. isn't it

Question 38 [573211]: Let's bring some orange juice for the party, _____?

A. could we B. shall we C. will you D. won't you

Question 39 [573212]: This is the first time she's been to New York, _____?

A. isn't this B. isn't it C. has she D. hasn't she

Question 40 [573213]: Darren has made no effort to finish the project, _____?

A. hasn't she B. doesn't she C. has not she D. does she

Question 41 [573214]: He ought not to steal her car, _____?

A. oughtn't he B. shouldn't he C. should he D. ought he

Question 42 [573215]: He thinks China is still the most populous country, _____?

A. isn't he B. doesn't it C. doesn't he D. isn't it

Question 43 [573216]: How wonderful the scene is, _____?

A. is it B. does it C. doesn't it D. isn't it

Question 44 [573217]: I like eating chocolate pastries, _____?

A. am I B. aren't I C. don't I D. do I

Question 45 [573218]: Sarah won't mind if I borrow her laptop, _____?

A. doesn't she B. won't she C. will she D. don't I

Question 46 [573219]: We scarcely have lunch at the park, _____?

A. haven't we B. don't we C. do we D. doesn't we

Question 47 [573220]: Let's focus on our lecture, _____?

A. can we B. can I C. will you D. shall we

Question 48 [573221]: Nothing is more precious than independence and freedom, _____?

A. is it B. isn't it C. will it D. won't it

Question 49 [573222]: You have finished your chores, _____?

A. haven't you B. don't you C. do you D. are you

Question 50 [573223]: *Dao, Pho va Piano* needs to be more popular, _____?

A. needn't it B. does it C. need it D. doesn't it

Chuyên đề XII SO SÁNH

COMPARISON

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. SO SÁNH HƠN VÀ SÁNH NHẤT

1. Tính từ ngắn và tính từ dài

➤ Tính từ ngắn là những từ chỉ bao gồm 1 âm tiết hoặc bao gồm 2 âm tiết và kết thúc bởi các đuôi -er, -et, -y, -le, -ow.

Ví dụ: big, small, tall, round, happy, quiet, narrow,...

➤ Tính từ dài là những từ bao gồm 2 âm tiết trở lên (trừ những từ 2 âm tiết có đuôi kể trên).

Ví dụ: wonderful, expensive, comfortable, modem,...

2. So sánh hơn

➤ Với tính từ ngắn:

adj-er + (than)

Ví dụ:

John now is happier than before. (John bây giờ thì vui vẻ hơn trước.)

➤ Với tính từ dài và trạng từ:

more/less + adj/adv + (than)

Ví dụ:

+ Apes are more intelligent than monkeys. (Tinh tinh thì thông minh hơn khỉ.)

+ She sings more beautifully than anyone in this room. (Cô ấy hát hay hơn bất cứ ai trong căn phòng này.)

+ Traditional markets are less convenient than shopping malls. (Chợ truyền thống thì kém tiện lợi hơn trung tâm thương mại.)

3. So sánh nhất

➤ Với tính từ ngắn:

the + adj-est

Ví dụ:

+ Knowledge is the easiest thing you can get for free. (Kiến thức là điều dễ nhất bạn có thể có miễn phí.)

➤ Với tính từ dài và trạng từ:

the most/least + adj/adv

Ví dụ:

+ The tower is the most magnificent building in the city. (Tòa tháp đó là tòa nhà tráng lệ nhất thành phố.)

+ Laura speaks English (the) most fluently in our class. (Laura nói tiếng Anh trôi chảy nhất lớp.)

+ This bed is the least expensive one in the store. (Chiếc giường này là chiếc ít đắt nhất trong cửa

hàng.)

★ Một số tính từ và trạng từ sẽ có dạng so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất đặc biệt được liệt kê trong bảng dưới đây:

Tính từ/Trạng từ	So sánh hơn	So sánh nhất
good/well	better	the best
bad/badly	worse	the worst
many/much	more	the most
little	less	the least
far	farther/further	the farthest/furthest
old	older/elder	the oldest/eldest

★ Một số trường hợp bỏ **THE** trong so sánh nhất:

Khi trước so sánh nhất đã có tính từ sở hữu: my, his, her, ...

Khi sau tính từ so sánh nhất không có danh từ

Dạng so sánh nhất với trạng từ' có thể bỏ **THE**

II. SO SÁNH BẰNG

➤ Với tính từ và trạng từ:

$S1 + be/V + as + adj/adv + as + S2$

Ví dụ:

She is as graceful as her mom. (Cô ấy duyên dáng như mẹ mình.)

He drives as carefully as the old driver. (Anh ta lái xe cẩn thận như người lái xe cũ.)

★ **Lưu ý:** Với câu phủ định của dạng so sánh bằng, có thể thay thế từ **as** thứ nhất bằng từ **so**.

Ví dụ:

This house is not so modern as the one we just visited. (Căn nhà này thì không hiện đại bằng căn chúng ta vừa ghé thăm.)

➤ Với danh từ

$S1 + to be + the same + N + as + S2$

Ví dụ:

Mary is the same age as Linda. (Mary thì cùng tuổi với Linda.)

III. SO SÁNH KÉP

➤ So sánh với một tính từ (càng ngày càng)

Tính từ ngắn: adj-er + and adj-er

Tính từ dài: more and more + adj

Ví dụ:

The weather is becoming hotter and hotter. (Thời tiết càng ngày càng nóng hơn.)

Taylor Swift is getting more and more famous. (Taylor Swift đang trở nên càng ngày càng nổi tiếng.)

➤ So sánh với 2 tính từ (càng ... càng)

The + so sánh hơn + S + V, the + so sánh hơn + S + V

Ví dụ:

+ The older you are, the more your experience will be. (*Bạn càng lớn tuổi thì trải nghiệm của bạn càng nhiều.*)

+ The more trees we plant, the greener our planet is. (*Chúng ta càng trồng nhiều cây, hành tinh này càng xanh hơn.*)

IV. SO SÁNH GẤP SỐ LẦN

S1 + V + **twice/three times/...** + **as** + much/many/adj + **as** + S2 + V

Ví dụ:

Gold price is four times as expensive as it was 20 years ago. (*Giá vàng đắt gấp 4 lần 20 năm trước.*)

Dưới đây là một số lưu ý với các cấu trúc so sánh:

1. Chúng ta dùng một số từ trước so sánh để nhấn mạnh như: much, far, a lot, a little, a bit,

Ví dụ: She is much taller than me. (*Cô ấy cao hơn tôi rất nhiều.*)

2. Khi dùng câu so sánh nên nhớ các đối tượng dùng để so sánh phải tương đương nhau: người với người, vật với vật.

Ví dụ:

His paintings are as beautiful as his teacher. → sai

(Câu này so sánh các bức tranh của anh ấy với giáo viên trong khi mục đích là so sánh bức tranh của anh ấy với bức tranh của giáo viên).

His drawings are as perfect as his teacher's (paintings). → đúng

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5179] - Tra ID Video [5180]

Question 1 [573224]: Ben is not _____ her brother.

- A. more intelligent as B. intelligent as
C. so intelligent as D. so intelligent that

Question 2 [573225]: Ho Chi Minh city is _____ than Ha Noi.

- A. more dynamic B. most dynamic C. as dynamic D. dynamic

Question 3 [573226]: He is the _____ student in this class.

- A. very bright B. most bright C. more bright D. less bright

Question 4 [573227]: Instead of slowing down, he drove _____.

- A. more fastly B. faster C. more fast D. more faster

Question 5 [573228]: Paul behaves _____ in our company.

- A. more different B. more differently C. most different D. most differently

Question 6 [573229]: Mount Everest is the _____ mountain on Earth.

- A. high B. higher C. highest D. highly of all

Question 7 [573230]: The deep oceans contain some of the _____ living creatures.

- A. strangest B. strange C. as strange as D. stranger

Question 8 [573231]: When comparing the Earth and the Moon, the Earth is _____ than the Moon.

- A. the largest B. larger C. more large D. largely

Question 9 [573232]: _____ you are, _____ you concentrate.

- A. Tired/ the least hard B. The more tired/ the harder
C. The tireder/ the harder D. The tired/ the harder

Question 10 [573233]: Vietnam exports _____ any countries in Southeast Asia.

- A. ricer than B. more rice than C. most rice D. most rice than

Question 11 [573234]: Of the two competitors, the first person _____.

- A. is knowledgeable B. the most knowledgeable
C. is more knowledgeable D. is so knowledgeable as

Question 12 [573235]: Your bed is _____ mine.

- A. as big as B. so big as C. as big so D. bigger as

Question 13 [573236]: He drives _____ than his brother.

- A. more careful B. more carefully C. more carefully D. as careful as

Question 14 [573237]: The Street has become _____ since they finished building the palace.

- A. more narrow B. more and more narrow
C. narrower and narrower D. most narrow

Question 15 [573238]: The faster we complete the task, _____.

- A. the sooner we can leave B. we can leave sooner and sooner
C. the sooner can we leave D. we can leave the sooner

Question 16 [573239]: The apples are _____ than the last time I bought it.

- A. badder B. bad C. worse D. worst

Question 17 [573240]: This hotel costs _____ the one we stayed in last year.

- A. two as much as B. twice as much as
C. as twice much as D. twice so much as

Question 18 [573241]: This is _____ movie that I've ever seen.

- A. the interesting B. the more interesting
C. the most interesting D. most interesting

Question 19 [573242]: Mia isn't _____ she looks.

- A. so young as B. as young so C. more young D. as young

Question 20 [573243]: Her mother's illness becomes _____.

- A. worst and worst B. more and more worse

C. worse and worse

D. more worse and more

Question 21 [573244]: John has _____ me.

A. as salary as

B. the same salary as

C. more salary as

D. many salary as

Question 22 [573245]: IELTS examination is getting _____ because students are better and better.

A. more and more difficult

B. much difficult and difficult

C. the most difficult

D. the more difficult

Question 23 [573246]: _____ the building is, _____ its walls have to be.

A. Higher/thicker

B. The more high/the more thick

C. The higher/the thicker

D. The more high/the thicker

Question 24 [573247]: Of the two sisters, Olivia is _____.

A. more clever

B. cleverer

C. most clever

D. cleverest

Question 25 [573248]: She got married to a man who is _____ her.

A. much more older

B. much older

C. more much older

D. much more old

Question 26 [573249]: This cake is cooked _____ than Paul's cake.

A. most skillful

B. skillfuller

C. more skillfully

D. more skill

Question 27 [573250]: The problem seems to be _____.

A. more and more hard

B. more hard and more hard

C. harder and harder

D. more and more harder

Question 28 [573251]: Sapa is considered as one of _____ places in the North of the Vietnam.

A. more attractive

B. most attractive

C. much attractive

D. attractly

Question 29 [573252]: The speed of the new car is _____ the previous one.

A. twice as fast as

B. twice fast as

C. as twice as faster than

D. twice faster than

Question 30 [573253]: Nobody was _____ than Molly when she knew she got the highest scholarship.

A. more happy

B. happier

C. the most happy

D. happiest

Question 31 [573254]: The big suitcase is _____ the small suitcase.

A. more heavy

B. heavier than

C. the heaviest

D. heaviest

Question 32 [573255]: People say I look just _____ my sister.

A. as same as

B. the same as

C. much as

D. the same

Question 33 [573256]: My friend Lily is _____ pretty as a princess.

A. as much

B. as

C. so

D. more

Question 34 [573257]: His daughter is _____ his son. He often cries when watching romantic movies.

A. less emotional

B. more emotional

C. much emotional

D. least emotional

Question 35 [573258]: Which area is _____? District 1 or district 3?

A. more quiet

B. quieter

C. the most quiet

D. as quiet

Question 36 [573259]: You must solve your problems _____.

A. as soon as you can

B. as soonly as you can

C. as soon than you are

D. as soon as you are

Question 37 [573260]: The accident was _____ we thought at first.

A. more seriously as

B. as seriously as

C. more serious than

D. as serious than

Question 38 [573261]: Thanks to the development of technology, our lives have become _____.

A. more and more good

B. better and better

C. the more and more good

D. gooder and gooder

Question 39 [573262]: Liam wrote more _____ with more mistakes than this term.

A. careless

B. careful

C. carefully

D. carelessly

Question 40 [573263]: Why did you buy these tangerines? - They were _____ I could find.

A. cheapest

B. cheapest ones

C. the cheapest ones

D. the most cheapest

Question 41 [573264]: The larger the city, _____ the crime rate.

A. highest

B. higher

C. the highest

D. the higher

Exercise 2. Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning.**Tra ID Đề [5181] - Tra ID Video [5182]****Question 1** [573265]: The new model of the car is faster than the old one.

→ The old car model

Question 2 [573266]: No one in the company is more hard-working than Kevin.

→ Kevin

Question 3 [573267]: He speaks too much, and people feel bored.

→ The more

Question 4 [573268]: I've never tasted a more delicious dish than this one.

→ This is the

Question 5 [573269]: Linda's hair is as long as mine.

→ Linda's hair is the

Question 6 [573270]: My brother studies better than my sister.

→ My sister doesn't

Question 7 [573271]: The students are interested in the difficult Math exercise.

→ The more

Question 8 [573272]: The skyscraper is taller than any other buildings in the city.

→ The skyscraper

Question 9 [573273]: This bed isn't so comfortable as the one Paul had before.

→ The bed Paul had before

Question 10 [573274]: This is the most boring film that I've ever seen.

→ I've never

Question 11 [573275]: She does not play badminton as well as Jake.

→ Jake can

Question 12 [573276]: Liam is the tallest student in the class.

→ No one

Question 13 [573277]: The apartment is bigger so the rent will be higher.

→ The bigger

Question 14 [573278]: This car is the same price as that one.

→ This car is as

Question 15 [573279]: Michael drives more carefully than Peter.

→ Peter drives

→ Peter doesn't drive

Question 16 [573280]: She thinks P.E is easier than Science.

→ She thinks P.E isn't

Question 17 [573281]: Joan can't cook as well as her mom.

→ Joan's mother can

Question 18 [573282]: If the story is interesting, people will concentrate on it.

→ The more

Question 19 [573283]: No one in the room dances as gracefully as Cinderella.

→ Cinderella

Question 20 [573284]: Have you got any bigger size for this dress?

→ Is this

Topic 6

HEALTHY LIFESTYLE

1. TỔNG HỢP TỪ VỰNG CẦN NHỚ

STT	Từ	Từ loại	Nghĩa
1	access	v	truy cập
2	accomplish	v	hoàn thành
3	account	n	tài khoản
4	additional	adj	thêm vào
5	allergy	n	bệnh dị ứng
	allergic	adj	bị dị ứng
6	ambulance	n	xe cứu thương
7	anxious	adj	lo âu
	anxiety	n	mối lo âu
8	appointment	n	cuộc hẹn
9	appropriate	adj	phù hợp
10	bone	n	xương
11	boost	v	thúc đẩy
12	break	n	giờ nghỉ giải lao
13	cafeteria	n	tiệm đồ ăn tự phục vụ
14	calendar	n	lịch
15	carsick	adj	say xe
16	counsellor	n	cố vấn
17	check-up	n	sự kiểm tra (sức khỏe)
18	chemical	n	hóa chất
	chemical	adj	(thuộc) hóa học
19	delay	v	trì hoãn
20	detox	v	thanh lọc
21	diary	n	nhật kí
22	diet	n	chế độ ăn kiêng
	(go) on a diet	phr	
23	digestive system	np	hệ tiêu hóa
	distract	v	làm xao nhãng
24	distraction	n	việc làm xao nhãng
25	due date	np	ngày đến hạn
26	effective	adj	có hiệu quả

27	effort	n	<i>nỗ lực</i>
28	expert	n	<i>chuyên gia</i>
29	eyesight	n	<i>thị lực</i>
30	fall asleep	phr	<i>Bắt đầu ngủ</i>
31	fattening	adj	<i>gây béo phì</i>
32	first aid	np	<i>sơ cứu</i>
33	flu	n	<i>cúm</i>
34	food poisoning	np	<i>ngộ độc thực phẩm</i>
35	function	n	<i>chức năng</i>
36	habit	n	<i>thói quen</i>
37	harmful	adj	<i>có hại</i>
38	hydrate	v	<i>làm ẩm/giữ nước</i>
39	junk food	np	<i>đồ ăn nhanh</i>
40	lose weight >< gain weight	phr	<i>giảm cân >< tăng cân</i>
41	maintain	v	<i>duy trì</i>
42	mineral	n	<i>khoáng chất</i>
43	muscle	n	<i>cơ bắp</i>
44	nap	n	<i>giác ngủ ngắn/ngủ trưa</i>
45	nature natural	n adj	<i>thiên nhiên (thuộc về) thiên nhiên</i>
46	necessary	adj	<i>cần thiết</i>
47	nourish	v	<i>nuôi dưỡng</i>
48	nutrient nutrition nutritious	n n adj	<i>chất dinh dưỡng dinh dưỡng bổ dưỡng</i>
49	obese obesity	adj n	<i>béo phì bệnh béo phì</i>
50	offer	v	<i>đề nghị</i>
51	optimistic >< pessimistic	adj adj	<i>lạc quan >< bi quan</i>
52	organ	n	<i>cơ quan, nội tạng</i>
53	pill	n	<i>viên thuốc</i>
54	positive	adj	<i>tích cực</i>

	>< negative	adj	tiêu cực
55	priority	n	sự ưu tiên
56	product	n	sản phẩm
57	productivity	n	năng suất, hiệu suất
58	promote	v	thúc đẩy
59	punish	v	phạt
60	physical	adj	(thuộc) vật lí, cơ thể
	mental	adj	(thuộc) tinh thần
61	reduce	v	giảm
62	regularly	adv	thường xuyên
63	remedy	n	liệu pháp, giải pháp
64	repair	v	sửa chữa
65	rest	v	ngủ ngơi
66	risk	n	nguy cơ
67	routine	n	thói quen, việc hay làm
68	salt	n	muối
69	schedule	n	lịch trình
70	sore throat	np	đau họng
71	stay up (late)	vp	ngủ muộn
72	sugary	adj	chứa đường
	sunblock	n	kem chống nắng
73	= sunscreen	n	kem chống nắng
74	sweat	n	mồ hôi
75	tip	n	mẹo
76	truth	n	sự thật
77	urgent	adj	khẩn cấp
78	well-balanced	adj	cân bằng, ổn định
79	workout	n	tập luyện thể chất

2. TỔNG HỢP CẤU TRÚC CẦN NHỚ

STT	Cụm	Nghĩa
1	be ready to V	sẵn sàng
2	distract sb from sth/V-ing	làm xao nhãng ai khỏi điều gì
3	sign out of sth	đăng xuất khỏi
4	focus on sth/V-ing = concentrate on sth/V-ing	tập trung vào
5	be addicted to sth	nghiện
6	come down with	mắc (bệnh)

7	deal with	<i>xử lý, giải quyết</i>
8	suggest + (not) V-ing	<i>đề nghị làm gì</i>
9	access to V	<i>truy cập, tiếp cận tới</i>
10	avoid + V-ing	<i>tránh làm gì</i>

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Fill in the blanks with the suitable given words.

Tra ID Đề [5187] - Tra ID Video [5188]

Paragraph 1

junk food	distractions	rest
remedy	mental	habit

Taking care of our (1) _____ health is significant, especially in today's fast-paced world filled with (2) _____ which prevent you from focusing on your things. Sometimes, the best (3) _____ is something simple and natural, like taking a moment to (4) _____ and unwind. While sugary and (5) _____ might seem like quick fixes, they can actually worsen our mental state in the long run. Developing a (6) _____ of nourishing our bodies with wholesome foods can significantly improve our overall well-being.

Paragraph 2

<i>sugary</i>	<i>harmful</i>	<i>digestive</i>
<i>check-ups</i>	<i>accomplish</i>	<i>diet</i>

Maintaining good physical health is essential for a happy life. Regular (1) _____ with doctors help us have information about any potential (2) _____ conditions. Adding natural foods into our (3) _____, rather than relying on (4) _____ or processed food, can significantly improve our overall well-being. By making small changes to our lifestyle, we can (5) _____ positive habits leading to better health. Remember, it's the little choices we make every day that add up to significant improvements of (6) _____ system.

Paragraph 3

<i>risk</i>	<i>energy</i>	<i>nutrients</i>
<i>supportive</i>	<i>prioritize</i>	<i>balanced</i>

For teenagers aiming to maintain a healthy lifestyle, a few key tips can make a big difference.

- First, (1) _____ regular physical activity. Whether it's through sports, or simply going for a walk helps maintain a healthy weight and boosts (2) _____ levels.
- Second, making nutritious food choices is essential. Adding plenty of fruits, vegetables, whole grains into meals provides the body with (3) _____ for growth and development.
- Third, limiting the intake of sugary drinks and snacks can also help prevent weight gain and reduce

the (4) _____ of developing diseases.

- Lastly, finding healthy ways to manage stress, such as engaging in hobbies, or spending time with (5) _____ friends and family, can contribute to a (6) lifestyle.

Exercise 2. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5189] - Tra ID Video [5190]

Question 1 [574204]: When is the _____ for the submission of the research paper?

- A. due date B. requirement C. check-up D. checkpoint

Question 2 [574205]: After a long day of studying, Sarah decided to take a quick _____ to recharge her energy.

- A. rest B. nap C. break D. run

Question 3 [574206]: Regular exercise helps to strengthen and tone your _____.

- A. bones B. muscles C. organs D. brain

Question 4 [574207]: To complete the project on time, they had to _____ late into the night.

- A. stand up B. stay up C. wake up D. get up

Question 5 [574208]: A(n) _____ approach to life involves managing time, relationships, and responsibilities effectively.

- A. well-balanced B. optimistic C. harmful D. urgent

Question 6 [574209]: Eating a variety of fruits and vegetables helps to _____ your body with essential vitamins and minerals.

- A. strengthen B. repair C. nourish D. refresh

Question 7 [574210]: If you're feeling stressed out, it may be helpful to speak with a professional _____.

- A. teacher B. advisor C. scientist D. counsellor

Question 8 [574211]: Sarah felt _____ about the upcoming exam, so she decided to practice relaxation techniques.

- A. excited B. anxious C. confident D. afraid

Question 9 [574212]: It's important to surround yourself with supportive people and avoid those who often emit _____ energy.

- A. positive B. optimistic C. negative D. supportive

Question 10 [574213]: She tried not to let her thoughts _____ her from completing the task at hand.

- A. distraction B. distract C. distracting D. distracted

Question 11 [574214]: Regular exercise and a balanced diet can help prevent _____ and promote overall health.

- A. obesity B. allergic C. obese D. allergy

Question 12 [574215]: She enjoys starting her day with a morning _____ to boost her energy and

mood.

A. homework B. workout C. housework D. exercises

Question 13 [574216]: It's important to choose _____ clothing for your workout to ensure comfort and freedom of movement.

A. colorful B. fashionable C. tight D. appropriate

Question 14 [574217]: Parents may choose to _____ their children for misbehavior as a form of education.

A. reward B. forgive C. punish D. encourage

Question 15 [574218]: Eating fruits and vegetables ensures that you get a wide range of essential _____ for your body.

A. fat B. minerals C. nutrients D. proteins

Question 16 [574219]: Before heading to the beach, don't forget to apply _____ to protect your skin from harmful UV rays.

A. sunscreen B. lotion C. sunblock D. sunlight

Question 17 [574220]: What is a natural _____ for a sore throat?

A. remedy B. routine C. chemical D. remind

Question 18 [574221]: The teacher threatened to _____ the students who didn't complete their homework.

A. delay B. punish C. reward D. encourage

Question 19 [574222]: A(n) _____ is an immune system response to a substance that the body mistakenly identifies as harmful.

A. reaction B. cough C. allergy D. allergic

Question 20 [574223]: When studying for exams, it's important to _____ on one subject at a time to improve focus.

A. distract B. concentrate C. rest D. review

Question 21 [574224]: To achieve success in time management, it's crucial to develop _____ strategies for prioritizing important tasks and maximizing productivity.

A. inefficient B. available C. effective D. short-term

Question 22 [574225]: It's advisable to create a detailed _____ to organize your daily activities and manage time efficiently.

A. subject B. schedule C. habit D. time

Question 23 [574226]: People with _____ vision might need to wear glasses or contact lenses to see objects clearly at a short distance.

A. farsighted B. nearsighted C. shortsighted D. farsighted

Question 24 [574227]: When facing a challenging problem, it's essential to remain calm and find ways to _____ with it.

A. deal B. handle C. interact D. negotiate

Question 25 [574228]: Regular exercise and a balanced diet are _____ for maintaining good health.

A. necessary B. harmful C. excessive D. avoidable

Question 26 [574229]: Users need a username and password to gain _____ to the system.

A. function B. benefit C. access D. network

Question 27 [574230]: In order to maintain good physical and mental well-being, teens should _____ on balanced nutrition and regular exercise.

A. distract B. focus C. depend D. reduce

Question 28 [574231]: If a teenager experiences a _____, it's advisable to drink warm water and gargle with salt water to ease discomfort.

A. fever B. headache C. sore throat D. flu

Question 29 [574232]: Consuming too much sugary food can lead to _____ problems among teens.

A. dental B. athletic C. hair D. gardening

Question 30 [574233]: The teacher provided several _____ in the multiple-choice questions to test the students' understanding of the topic.

A. answers B. distractors C. workout D. explanations

Exercise 3. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5191] - Tra ID Video [5192]

Question 1 [574234]: The noise from the construction site outside tends to interrupt me while I'm studying.

A. hurt B. assist C. boost D. distract

Question 2 [574235]: I go for a run in the park frequently to stay fit and healthy.

A. rarely B. regularly C. never D. early

Question 3 [574236]: Reading is beneficial for expanding knowledge and improving cognitive abilities.

A. harmful B. interesting C. advantageous D. boring

Question 4 [574237]: The deadline for submitting the project is tomorrow, so completing it is the top priority.

A. urgent B. effective C. anxious D. happy

Question 5 [574238]: With determination and endeavor, she managed to climb to the top of the mountain.

A. laziness B. effort C. dangers D. impatience

Exercise 4. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5193] - Tra ID Video [5194]

Question 1 [574239]: She preferred using **natural** remedies for minor ailments instead of relying on medication.

- A. traditional B. artificial C. organic D. normal

Question 2 [574240]: I think I'm **getting over** a cold; I've been feeling much better today.

- A. get through B. get over C. come down with D. give up

Question 3 [574241]: Maintaining an **optimistic** life can greatly impact one's overall wellbeing and success in life.

- A. negative B. positive C. physical D. mental

Question 4 [574242]: I need to **remain awake** late tonight to finish my assignment before the deadline.

- A. stay up B. fall asleep C. work hard D. have a rest

Question 5 [574243]: The school organized events to **promote** students' participation in extracurricular activities.

- A. encourage B. offer C. discourage D. increase

Exercise 5. Rewrite the following sentences by using the word in the brackets.

Tra ID Đè [5195] - Tra ID Video [5196]

Question 1 [574244]: "Why don't we stay up late to study for the exam?" I said. **(SUGGESTED)**

→ I

Question 2 [574245]: Hoa booked the ticket 2 months ago, so she doesn't have to wait now.

(AVOID)

→ To

Question 3 [574246]: During meditation, you should focus on your breathing. **(CONCENTRATE)**

→ You

Question 4 [574247]: She cannot finish the homework because of the noise. **(DISTRACTS)**

→ The noisy sound

Question 5 [574248]: A lot of people nowadays can't give up the internet. **(ADDICTED)**

→ A lot of

Exercise 6. Odd one out.

Tra ID Đè [5197] - Tra ID Video [5198]

Question 1 [574249]:

- A. nutrition B. exercise C. caffeine D. hydration

Question 2 [574250]:

- A. vegetable B. whole grain C. fruit D. chips

Question 3 [574251]:

- A. anxious B. vaccinate C. depressed D. angry

Question 4 [574252]:

- A. junk food B. fast food C. fruit D. soft drink

Question 5 [574253]:

- A. allergy B. flu C. sore throat D. first aid

Question 6 [574254]:

- A. sunscreen B. mineral C. check-up D. nearsighted

Question 7 [574255]:

- A. obesity B. sunburn C. acne D. remedy

Question 8 [574256]:

- A. cycling B. sweat C. workout D. swimming

Question 9 [574257]:

- A. alcohol B. smoking C. nutrients D. stress

Question 10 [574258]:

- A. risk B. balance C. detox D. nourish

Exercise 7. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct arrangement of the sentences to make a meaningful paragraph/letter for the following questions.

Tra ID ĐỀ [5199] - Tra ID Video [5200]

Question 1 [581962]:

- I've also started incorporating more vegetables and fruits into my diet.
- Dear Sarah, I hope you're doing great!
- I'm excited to share that I've recently made some positive changes to my lifestyle.
- Let's catch up soon—I'd love to hear about any new habits you've been working on.
- I've started going for morning jogs and doing yoga on the weekends.
- Take care, and I look forward to our chat!

- A. b-e-d-a-c-f B. b-c-e-a-d-f C. e-d-c-a-b-f D. b-e-a-d-c-f

Question 2 [581963]:

- Secondly, setting achievable goals can keep you motivated and on track.
- Above all, these steps I just mentioned should be done as soon as possible.
- Weight loss is a gradual process that requires a lot of effort.
- Finally, consulting with a healthcare professional can provide personalized guidance and support.
- Additionally, drinking plenty of water can help improve overall health.
- Firstly, eating a balanced diet and exercising regularly are key components of a successful weight loss plan.

- A. f-a-b-c-e-d B. c-f-b-a-e-d C. c-f-a-e-d-b D. c-f-a-e-b-d

Questions [581964]:

- Additionally, staying hydrated by drinking plenty of water throughout the day contributes to bodily functions and energy levels.

- b. A healthy lifestyle involves a lot of factors.
- c. Adequate sleep is also crucial besides having enough water, as it helps the body recover and function optimally.
- d. First, regular physical activity is essential for maintaining good health and preventing chronic diseases.
- e. Finally, forming a healthy lifestyle is not difficult as long as you adapt these factors.
- f. Second, eating a balanced diet that includes a variety of fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and lean proteins supports overall well-being.
- A. b-d-f-c-a-e B. b-d-c-f-a-e C. d-f-a-c-e-b D. b-d-f-a- c - e

Question 4. [583470]

- a. We must combine both exercise and nutritious diet to stay in shape.
- b. Lastly, staying active every day, even with simple activities like walking, contributes to overall health.
- c. Next, eating a variety of fruits, vegetables, and whole grains provides the necessary nutrients for energy and recovery.
- d. Firstly, for a balanced routine, it's important to include both cardio exercises and strength training.
- e. Besides food, drinking plenty of water helps keep your body hydrated and supports your fitness efforts.
- f. In conclusion, combining exercise, proper nutrition, and daily activity helps maintain a healthy lifestyle.
- A. a-d-e-c-b-f B. a-d-c-e-b-f C. d-e-a-c-b-f D. a-d-c-b-e-f

Question 5. [583471]

- a. Finally, creating a sleep schedule, where you go to bed and wake up at the same time every day.
- b. Then, avoiding large meals and caffeine close to bedtime can help you fall asleep more easily. In summary, following these sleep tips can lead to better rest and overall health.
- c. There are many ways to improve your sleeping quality.
- d. To begin with, limiting screen time before bed helps reduce exposure to blue light, which can interfere with your sleep.
- e. Thirdly, keeping your bedroom cool and dark to create a comfortable sleep environment.
- A. e-d-b-f-a-c B. e-d-f-a-b-c C. d-e-b-f-a-c D. d-e-f-a-b-c

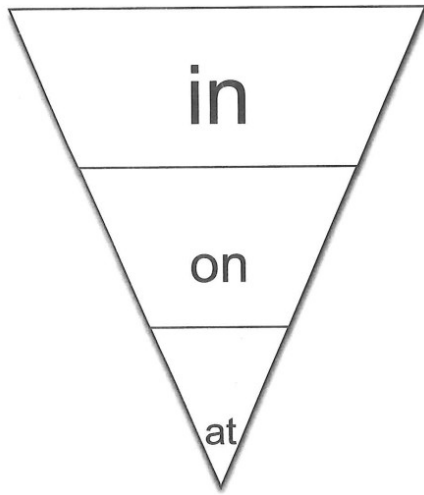
Chuyên đề GIỚI TỪ

XIII PREPOSITIONS

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Giới từ là từ dùng trước danh từ, cụm danh từ hoặc và nối nó với những từ khác.

I. GIỚI TỪ CHỈ THỜI GIAN



- tháng, năm, mùa, thế kỉ (in 1993, in summer)
 - buổi trong ngày (in the morning/ afternoon/evening)
 - các cụm từ: in the past, in the future

- thứ trong tuần (Monday, Sunday ...)
 - ngày (21st April, 8th May 2023)
 - on vacation/holiday/busines

- giờ (4 o'clock, 6:30 pm)
 - dịp lễ (Christmas, Thanksgiving)
 - at noon/midday/night/midnig

★ Lưu ý: Ngay cả khi có buổi trong ngày, tháng, năm nhưng khi có ngày ta vẫn dùng **on** đứng trước

Ví dụ: “in the morning, in 1993” hoặc “in July”

Nhưng là “on 27th, July 1993” hoặc “on Friday morning”

Ngoài ra, chúng ta còn một số giới từ thời gian khác như:

- Before: trước
- After: sau
- During: trong suốt
- By: vào, tính tới
- Until/till: cho đến
- Throughout: trải dọc/khắp nơi/trong suốt

II. GIỚI TỪ CHỈ VỊ TRÍ

in	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • có nghĩa là bên trong (một khu vực kín hoặc được bao quanh) • dùng trước quốc gia, thành phố, khu vực rộng lớn • in front of (<i>đằng trước</i>), in the middle of (<i>ở giữa</i>)
on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • mang ý nghĩa là bên trên một bề mặt • on the left/right of
at	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dùng trước địa điểm, khu vực cụ thể (tại/ở)
under	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bên dưới
above	bên trên, nhưng cao hơn hoặc không tiếp xúc với bề mặt
next to/besides/by	• kế bên/bên cạnh
between	ở giữa 2 người/vật
among	ở giữa 2 người/vật trở lên
behind	đằng sau
opposite	đối diện
near	gần

III. GIỚI TỪ CHỈ SỰ CHUYỂN ĐỘNG

Giới từ	Cách dùng
---------	-----------

on >< off	lên trên >< xuống khỏi
into >< out of	vào trong >< ra ngoài
up >< down	lên >< xuống
towards >< away	hướng đến >< rời khỏi
over	qua bên trên (hole)
across	băng qua bên phía còn lại, mặt phẳng (street, river)
through	xuyên qua phần được bao quanh hoặc kín (forest, pipe)
around	xung quanh
along	dọc theo
from... to	từ... đến

Ngoài ra chúng ta còn một số giới từ khác cần lưu ý như:

- ✖ about: về
- ✖ of: của
- ✖ for: cho
- ✖ with: với
- ✖ by: bằng (phương tiện)

IV. CÁC CỤM TỪ CÓ ĐỊNH VỚI GIỚI TỪ

Giới từ	Cụm từ	Nghĩa
about	be excited about to worry/be worried about be curious about be sorry about sth	<i>hào hứng về</i> <i>lo lắng về</i> <i>tò mò về</i> <i>lấy làm tiếc vì</i>
at	be good/bad at sth be amazed at sth be mad at sb/sth	<i>giỏi/tệ cái gì</i> <i>kinh ngạc về</i> <i>tức điên lên về</i>
for	be available for be bad/good for be well-known/famous for prepare for be suitable for be ready for wait for sb	<i>có sẵn/rảnh</i> <i>tốt/xấu cho</i> <i>nổi tiếng vì</i> <i>chuẩn bị cho</i> <i>thích hợp với</i> <i>sẵn sàng vì</i> <i>đợi ai</i>
from	be different from escape from suffer from result from	<i>khác với</i> <i>trốn thoát khỏi</i> <i>chịu đựng</i> <i>vì</i>

	be far from prevent sb from protect sb from	<i>xa</i> <i>ngăn ai làm gì</i> <i>bảo vệ ai khỏi cái gì</i>
in	be experienced in be interested in sth/doing sth be involved in/ get involved in be talented in to believe in sb/sth to succeed in sth/doing sth	<i>có kinh nghiệm</i> <i>yêu thích cái gì/làm gì có</i> <i>liên quan đến/tham gia vào</i> <i>liên quan đến/tham gia vào</i> <i>tài năng về</i> <i>tin tưởng ai/cái gì</i> <i>thành công làm gì</i>
of	be afraid of be fond of be aware of be full of be tired of be short of be proud of lack of sth be capable of be kind of sb	<i>e ngại</i> <i>thích thú</i> <i>có ý thức</i> <i>đầy</i> <i>mệt mỏi bởi</i> <i>thiếu</i> <i>tự hào về</i> <i>thiếu</i> <i>có khả năng</i> <i>tốt bụng</i>
on	be based on be keen on to depend on to focus/concentrate on	<i>dựa trên</i> <i>thích thú/đam mê</i> <i>dựa vào</i> <i>tập trung vào cái gì</i>
to	be able to to access to/be accessible to be accustomed to be addicted to be familiar to sb be kind to sb be likely to be similar to be willing to	<i>có thể, có khả năng</i> <i>truy cập/tiếp cận vào</i> <i>quen với</i> <i>nghiện</i> <i>quen thuộc với ai</i> <i>tử tế với ai</i> <i>có thể sẽ</i> <i>tương tự như</i> <i>sẵn lòng</i>
with	be busy with be bored with be fed up with	<i>bận với</i> <i>chán nản với</i> <i>chán nản</i>

be familiar with sth	<i>quen thuộc với cái gì</i>
be popular with	<i>phổ biến với</i>
deal with	<i>giải quyết</i>
cope with	<i>đương đầu với</i>
be satisfied with sth	<i>hài lòng với</i>
be crowded with	<i>đông đúc</i>

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Choose the correct preposition: in, on, at to fill in the blanks.

Tra ID Đề [5202] - Tra ID Video [5203]

Question 1 [573285]: Cars were invented _____ 1886 by Carl Benz.

Question 2 [573286]: Henry is going to meet his pen pal _____ Christmas.

Question 3 [573287]: We work together _____ a large super-market.

Question 4 [573288]: My family travelled to Ha Long Ba _____ your vacation.

Question 5 [573289]: _____ the past, people usually gathered and lived in cottages.

Question 6 [573290]: The train leaves _____ 10:30, so remember to bring your ticket with you.

Question 7 [573291]: Sophia's birthday is _____ May 16th.

Question 8 [573292]: Tom isn't here _____ the moment. He'll be back _____ five minutes.

Question 9 [573293]: Last year, we had a wonderful skiing holiday _____ Mount. Fuji.

Question 10 [573294]: Our project must be completed _____ the weekend. We only have 2 days.

Question 11 [573295]: If the sky is clear, you can see the stars _____ night.

Question 12 [573296]: The book was lying _____ the table when I left.

Question 13 [573297]: Would you like to leave a message? Mr. Brown is busy _____ the moment.

Question 14 [573298]: He spends most of the day sitting _____ the window and looking outside.

Question 15 [573299]: The leaves _____ that tree are so colorful.

Question 16 [573300]: She arrived _____ the airport just in time for her flight.

Question 17 [573301]: The children were playing _____ the park all afternoon.

Question 18 [573302]: The cookies are _____ the jar on the kitchen counter.

Question 19 [573303]: He lives _____ the apartment _____ the third floor.

Question 20 [573304]: They found a cozy café _____ the hill with a vibrant view.

Exercise 2. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5204] - Tra ID Video [5205]

Question 1 [573305]: The children ran _____ the field to catch the ball.

A. in B. across C. up D. out

Question 2 [573306]: She walked _____ the park to get _____ her daily exercise routine.

A. through/with B. across/from C. around/to D. along/at

Question 3 [573307]: Take your time! The meeting has been postponed _____ next Tuesday.

A. on B. until C. from D. by

Question 4 [573308]: Jimmy received a birthday gift _____ his friend.

A. to B. from C. with D. on

Question 5 [573309]: Elon Musk was born _____ June 28th, 1971 _____ the United States

A. in/in B. on/in C. on/at D. in/at

Question 6 [573310]: Some people were talking in the cinema _____ the film.

A. during B. in C. with D. over

Question 7 [573311]: The store is open _____ 9 PM on weekdays.

A. until B. under C. at D. through

Question 8 [573312]: His car had broken down and he had to come _____ taxi.

A. in B. with C. by D. on

Question 9 [573313]: Don't walk in the street! Walk here _____ the sidewalk.

A. in B. at C. across D. on

Question 10 [573314]: I hung the picture _____ the fireplace.

A. on B. over C. in D. above

Question 11 [573315]: The door was locked, so Jack put the letter _____ the door.

A. into B. out of C. behind D. under

Question 12 [573316]: I haven't met Mr. Green _____ the summer break. He must be _____ his hometown in California.

A. in/on B. during/on C. in/at D. during/in

Question 13 [573317]: They stayed _____ late last night to finish their project.

A. down B. under C. up D. around

Question 14 [573318]: Would you please tell me how to get _____ the baseball park?

A. to B. on C. from D. by

Question 15 [573319]: When the play opened _____ Philadelphia a week ago, the critics gave it positive reviews.

A. during B. in C. on D. next

Question 16 [573320]: A dictionary has the pronunciation and meanings _____ lots of words.

A. to B. about C. in D. of

Question 17 [573321]: When my mom was a teenager, she used to get up _____ 5:30 to get ready.

A. at B. on C. for D. in

Question 18 [573322]: The hikers walked _____ the dense forest, following a narrow pathway.

A. through B. under C. behind D. over

Question 19 [573323]: When hearing the sound, the cat jumped _____ the sofa and went to the kitchen.

A. on B. off C. in D. out

Question 20 [573324]: She couldn't find her keys and searched _____ the house.

- A. around B. over C. between D. under

Question 21 [573325]: He likes to relax _____ listening to classical music.

- A. with B. during C. through D. by

Question 22 [573326]: She kept practicing _____ midnight. Finally, she could play the song perfectly.

- A. until B. upon C. during D. at

Question 23 [573327]: People in my country usually gather round _____ New Year's Eve.

- A. at B. in C. on D. to

Question 24 [573328]: They don't live _____ the city center but in a suburb of Ha Noi.

- A. on B. at C. in D. with

Question 25 [573329]: The children ran _____ from the storm when it started to rain heavily.

- A. away B. over C. until D. across

Question 26 [573330]: The power went out _____ the thunderstorm, so we lit candles.

- A. during B. until C. by D. under

Question 27 [573331]: We need to finish the project _____ the deadline next Friday.

- A. before B. beside C. above D. after

Question 28 [573332]: She managed to solve the quiz _____ carefully studying the clues.

- A. by B. beside C. around D. with

Question 29 [573333]: He sat _____ at the piano and began to play a beautiful melody.

- A. down B. over C. through D. up

Question 30 [573334]: The presentation is scheduled _____ Monday afternoon.

- A. in B. on C. of D. at

Exercise 3. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đè [5206] - Tra OD Video [5207]

Question 1 [573335]: Although having prepared for it, Lucy is still _____ her upcoming presentation.

- A. worried about B. involved in C. far from D. good at

Question 2 [573336]: He is keen _____ learning new languages.

- A. of B. on C. to D. in

Question 3 [573337]: The chef is excited _____ creating new recipes.

- A. of B. with C. by D. about

Question 4 [573338]: She is a big fan of fast food, so she is not familiar _____ this healthy lifestyle.

- A. with B. to C. about D. of

Question 5 [573339]: Hana is _____ height and prefers to stay on lower floors in buildings.

- A. busy with B. full of C. afraid of D. fond of

Question 6 [573340]: He seemed _____ in joining the debate club. He has been always smiling.

- A. bored B. interested C. annoyed D. confused

Question 7 [573341]: After the heavy rain, the river was _____ water, overflowing its banks.

- A. full of B. short of C. crowded with D. lack of

Question 8 [573342]: The high fence was designed to prevent the children _____ playing in the dangerous construction site.

- A. in B. away C. from D. of

Question 9 [573343]: Leonardo da Vinci is _____ his masterpiece, the Mona Lisa.

- A. known as B. famous for C. popular with D. similar to

Question 10 [573344]: To improve her grades, Sarah decided to concentrate _____ her studies and spend more time in the library.

- A. to B. about C. with D. on

Question 11 [573345]: Sam's parents are so proud _____ him because he just got a scholarship.

- A. on B. of C. in D. about

Question 12 [573346]: Many of the stories are based _____ rumors.

- A. with B. at C. on D. in

Question 13 [573347]: He is waiting _____ me at the end of the road.

- A. in B. at C. for D. to

Question 14 [573348]: Pamela is fed up _____ this awful rainy weather.

- A. in B. to C. in D. with

Question 15 [573349]: Don't worry _____ the money! I'll lend you.

- A. with B. about C. for D. to

Question 16 [573350]: She's fond _____ gardening so she can spend hours with her plants every day.

- A. on B. in C. of D. by

Question 17 [573351]: She was bored _____ her job and wanted a new challenge.

- A. about B. with C. of D. in

Question 18 [573352]: Many people use music as a way to _____ the pressures of work and relax.

- A. escape from B. focus on C. distract by D. fond of

Question 19 [573353]: The volunteers are _____ work long hours to clean up the park after the storm.

- A. willing to B. full of C. addicted to D. keen on

Question 20 [573354]: Regular exercise is good _____ both physical and mental health.

- A. at B. about C. with D. for

Exercise 4. Draw a circle around the correct preposition in parentheses in the following paragraphs

Tra ID Đề [5208] - Tra ID Video [5209]

Paragraph 1

John Doe, who graduated (**of/from**) the University of North Carolina two years ago, is now doing graduate work (in/on) engineering (**at/to**) Georgia Tech Company. He expects to receive his master's

degree next June. After that, he plans to accept a job as a technician **(by/with)** an oil company **(in/at)** South America.

Paragraph 2

Jim was walking **(across/over)** the campus **(in/at)** noon when he met a friend whom he had not seen **(since/during)** summer. They stopped **(in front of/around)** the class and sat down **(in/on)** the steps. After they had talked **(for/during)** about ten minutes, **Jim** said, “I must go **(toward/to)** Jefferson Hall this semester. Why don’t you drop by some afternoon after classes?”

Paragraph 3

Mr. Hill arrived in New York **(on/in)** May 10th **(at/on)** eight o’clock **(in/on)** the evening. He decided to call his uncle who lived on Fifth Avenue. He got on a bus **(at/of)** the station and put his coin **(on/into)** the farebox. The bus was very crowded, so Mr. Hill had to stand **(up/out)** all the way.

Chuyên đề MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

XIV RELATIVE CLAUSES

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Mệnh đề quan hệ thường đứng sau danh từ và cho chúng ta thêm thông tin danh từ đó. Mệnh đề quan hệ được bắt đầu bằng một đại từ quan hệ hoặc trạng từ quan hệ.

I. ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ QUAN HỆ

1. Đại từ quan hệ

a. Who

➤ Chỉ người, làm chủ ngữ

Ví dụ:

The woman who is sitting near the window is my sister. (Người phụ nữ người mà đang ngồi gần cửa sổ là chị gái tôi.)

b. Whom

➤ Chỉ người, làm tân ngữ

Ví dụ:

Lia, whom I met yesterday, is a ballerina. (Lia, người tôi đã gặp ngày hôm qua, là một vũ công ba lê.)

c. Which

➤ Chỉ vật, làm chủ ngữ và tân ngữ

Ví dụ:

+ Ha Noi, which is popular for “Phở”, is known as “The City for Peace”. (Hà Nội, phổ biến với món phở, được biết đến như thành phố vì hòa bình.)

+ The pen which she borrowed from me is my birthday present. (Cái bút cái mà cô ấy mượn tôi là một món quà sinh nhật của tôi.)

d. That

➤ Chỉ người và vật, làm chủ ngữ và tân ngữ.

Trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định, that có thể thay thế được cho cả who, whom, which.

Ví dụ

Anna keeps talking about the film that (which) she saw yesterday. (Anne cứ nói về bộ phim mà cô ấy đã xem ngày hôm qua.)

e. Whose

➤ Chỉ sự sở hữu, thay thế cho tính từ sở hữu và theo sau bởi một danh từ.

Ví dụ:

The boy whose father is a doctor is very intelligent. (Cậu bé người mà có bố là bác sĩ thì rất thông minh.)

2. Trạng từ quan hệ

a. When (= in, on, at which)

➤ Chỉ thời gian

Ví dụ:

The day when (on which) the concert takes place is Sunday. *(Ngày khi mà buổi hòa nhạc diễn ra là Chủ nhật.)*

b. Where (= in, on, at which)

➤ Chỉ nơi chốn

Ví dụ:

London, where (in which) my cousin is living, is very beautiful. *(Luân Đôn, nơi mà em họ tôi đang sinh sống, thì rất hiện đại.)*

c. Why (= for which)

➤ Chỉ lí do

Ví dụ:

She is the reason why I didn't leave. *(Cô ấy là lí do mà tôi đã không rời đi.)*

II. CÁC LOẠI MỆNH ĐỀ**1. Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định**

Là mệnh đề quan hệ có vai trò cung cấp thông tin quan trọng giúp xác định rõ danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa. Những mệnh đề này không thể bị lược bỏ.

Ví dụ:

The lady who is wearing the red dress is my boss. *(Người phụ nữ người đang mặc váy đỏ là sếp của tôi.)*

Trong câu trên, nếu chúng ta lược bỏ mệnh đề quan hệ, câu sẽ còn là: 'The lady is my boss'. Chúng ta sẽ không thể xác định được đó là người phụ nữ nào giả sử khi đó có nhiều người phụ nữ. Mệnh đề quan hệ **"who is wearing the red dress"** giúp ta xác định rõ người muốn nhắc đến là ai.

➤ Danh từ trước mệnh đề quan hệ xác định thường có mạo từ "a", "an", "the"

➤ Có thể bỏ "whom", "which", "that" khi chúng làm tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định

Ví dụ:

The cake which I made has orange flavor. *(Cái bánh mà tôi đã làm có vị cam.)*

O S V

= The cake I made has orange flavor.

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định

Là mệnh đề quan hệ có vai trò cung cấp thông tin bổ sung cho danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa. Mệnh đề này thường được ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bởi cặp dấu phẩy và có thể lược bỏ đi.

Ví dụ:

Tom's house, which is 3 blocks away, was painted yesterday. *(Nhà của tôi, cái mà cách 3 dãy nhà, thì được sơn vào ngày hôm qua.)*

Trong câu trên kể cả khi chúng ta lược bỏ mệnh đề quan hệ và câu trở thành: “Tom’s house was painted yesterday.” chúng ta vẫn có thể xác định được căn nhà đó vì nó chính là nhà của Tom.

➤ Danh từ trước mệnh đề quan hệ xác định thường là:

- Danh từ riêng: Tom, Mr. Jones,...
- Danh từ với tính từ chỉ định: this boy, that girl,...
- Danh từ với tính từ sở hữu hoặc sở hữu cách: my car, Tom’s house,...

★ Lưu ý: không dùng **THAT** trong mệnh đề quan hệ **không xác định**.

III. GIỚI TỪ TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

Trong mệnh đề quan hệ, giới từ có 2 vị trí đứng:

1. Đứng trước đại từ quan hệ

2. Đứng sau động từ

Ví dụ: She is the woman about whom I told you.

She is the woman whom I told you about.

★ Lưu ý:

Giới từ không đứng trước that và who

Khi giới từ thuộc cụm động từ có nghĩa cố định, chúng ta không chuyển giới từ lên trước đại từ quan hệ.

Ví dụ:

The girl whom I ran into was looking for her key. (Cô gái người mà tôi đã va phải thì đang tìm chìa khóa của cô ấy.)

Trong câu trên, cụm “ran into” có nghĩa là va phải, nhưng khi ta tách ‘into’ khỏi ‘ran’ khi từ ran lại có nghĩa là chạy. Vậy, ‘ran into’ là một cụm động từ mang nghĩa cố định nên ta không thể tách ra được.

IV. RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (NÂNG CAO)

Có ba cách cơ bản để rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ:

1. Rút gọn bằng Ving

➤ Khi mệnh đề quan hệ ở dạng chủ động

Ví dụ:

The woman who works at this company wants to find another job.

→ The woman working at this company wants to find another job.

(Người phụ nữ làm việc ở công ty này muốn tìm một công việc khác.)

2. Rút gọn bằng P2

➤ Khi mệnh đề quan hệ ở dạng bị động

Ví dụ:

The trees which are planted near the fence belong to the citrus family.

→ The trees planted near the fence belong to the citrus family.

(Những cây được trồng gần hàng rào thuộc họ cam quýt.)

3. Rút gọn bằng to - V

Khi đại từ quan hệ làm chủ ngữ có các yếu tố sau:

- + Số thứ tự: the first, the second, the next, the only,...
- + So sánh nhất: the oldest, the youngest, the most beautiful, ...

Ví dụ:

Steve was the last man who left the burning building.

→ Steve was the last man to leave the burning building.

(Steve là người cuối cùng rời tòa nhà đang cháy.)

V. CÁCH KẾT HỢP CÂU DÙNG ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ

Bước 1: Xác định phần giống nhau giữa hai mệnh đề, câu.

Bước 2: Viết mệnh đề 1 và tìm đại từ, trạng từ quan hệ phù hợp để đặt sau nó.

Bước 3: Bỏ đi các phần mà đại từ quan hệ đã thay thế để tránh lặp lại.

Ví dụ: Kết hợp 2 câu sau bằng mệnh đề quan hệ:

The books are very interesting. They were bought a long time ago.

(Những quyển sách rất thú vị. Chúng được mua lâu rồi.)

Phần giống nhau: the books = they: những quyển sách

Viết lại: The books which they were bought long time ago are very interesting.

Bỏ đi các phần đã thay thế: The books which were bought long time ago are very interesting.

(Những quyển sách cái mà được mua lâu rồi thì rất thú vị.)

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Fill in the blanks with who, whom, which, that, whose, when, where, why.

Tra ID Đề [5211] - Tra ID Video [5212]

Question 1 [573355]: The book _____ I borrowed from the library missed several pages.

Question 2 [573356]: This is the house _____ they used to live.

Question 3 [573357]: Do you remember the time _____ we first met?

Question 4 [573358]: The reason _____ she resigned is still unclear.

Question 5 [573359]: He is writing something _____ may be published.

Question 6 [573360]: Do you know the person _____ owns that fancy car _____ parked outside?

Question 7 [573361]: The restaurant _____ we had dinner last night specializes in seafood.

Question 8 [573362]: He gave me the keys _____ open the main gate.

Question 9 [573363]: The girl _____ you were talking to is my sister.

Question 10 [573364]: This is the reason _____ I am late. I missed the bus.

Question 11 [573365]: The hotel _____ we stayed in was very luxurious.

Question 12 [573366]: She wore the dress _____ I gave her as a birthday present.

Question 13 [573367]: This is the day _____ we are supposed to submit our assignments.

Question 14 [573368]: The artist _____ paintings are displayed in the gallery won several awards.

Question 15 [573369]: This is the restaurant _____ we had our first date.

Question 16 [573370]: The book _____ you recommended is quite interesting.

Question 17 [573371]: Is there any explanation _____ she left the party early?

Question 18 [573372]: Emma and the bird _____ appeared in the competition yesterday are good partners.

Question 19 [573373]: The dog _____ chased the cat belongs to our neighbor.

Question 20 [573374]: The student _____ I gave the scholarship worked hard throughout the semester.

Exercise 2. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5213] - Tra ID Video [5214]

Question 1 [573375]: This is the city _____ she grew up.

A. that B. where C. which D. whose

Question 2 [573376]: Is there a reason _____ she didn't attend the meeting?

A. why B. who C. which D. that

Question 3 [573377]: Hue, _____ he visited last summer, is known for its historical sites.

A. where B. whose C. which D. that

Question 4 [573378]: Do you know the person _____ wallet was found in the park?

A. who B. whose C. which D. whom

Question 5 [573379]: This is the place _____ we had our honeymoon.

A. where B. which C. who D. that

Question 6 [573380]: We saw the girl _____ you talked to yesterday.

A. which B. whom C. when D. whose

Question 7 [573381]: She talked about the books and the authors _____ interested her.

A. who B. that C. which D. whom

Question 8 [573382]: The knife _____ we cut meat is very sharp.

A. with that B. which C. with which D. that

Question 9 [573383]: Do you know the person _____ phone number was on the contact list?

A. whose B. who C. which D. whom

Question 10 [573384]: The year _____ he died was full of natural disasters.

A. on which B. which C. in which D. where

Question 11 [573385]: She finally met the scientist _____ research has revolutionized modern medicine.

A. that B. whose C. who D. which

Question 12 [573386]: Is that the restaurant _____ serves the famous seafood pasta?

A. where B. which C. who D. what

Question 13 [573387]: She listed three reasons _____ people get into debt.

A. what B. why C. when D. which

Question 14 [573388]: The parcel arrived in the post at 11 am, _____ I was still at work.

A. who B. that C. which D. when

Question 15 [573389]: John won \$20,000, half of _____ he gave to his parents.

A. it B. whom C. which D. that

Question 16 [573390]: The floor _____ which I am living is not in very good condition.

A. in B. on C. at D. for

Question 17 [573391]: The athlete _____ celebrated with her team.

A. breaking the world record B. broke the world record
C. which broke the world record D. whom broke the world record

Question 18 [573392]: The mountain _____ they climbed is the tallest in the region.

A. in which B. to where C. to that D. on which

Question 19 [573393]: She told me she didn't have any money, _____ was a pity.

A. which B. that C. this D. it

Question 20 [573394]: That bar on Milton Street, _____ by the way is very nice, is owned by Trevor's brother.'

A. where B. which C. that D. on which

Question 21 [573395]: The man _____ car broke down yesterday is my neighbor.

A. whose B. who C. which D. whom

Question 22 [573396]: She likes the president, _____ she once described as a gentle man.

A. whom B. which C. who D. what

Question 23 [573397]: Her mother, _____ she relied, said she would support her for good.

A. on which B. on whom C. in that D. in whom

Question 24 [573398]: Is this the place _____ we're supposed to meet tomorrow?

A. which B. whom C. where D. who

Question 25 [573399]: He called James, _____ was a good friend as well as the family doctor.

A. whom B. who C. that D. which

Question 26 [573400]: The city _____ I love is Ha Noi.

A. that B. where C. when D. in which

Question 27 [573401]: It's the house _____ door is painted red.

A. which B. whose C. in which D. at which

Question 28 [573402]: The book _____ became a bestseller.

A. written by J.K. Rowling B. that J.K. Rowling wrote it
C. J.K. Rowling's writing D. which written by J.K. Rowling

Question 29 [573403]: I'll never understand _____ she did what she did.

- A. of which B. on which C. for which D. at which

Question 30 [573404]: The part of town _____ I live is very noisy at night, _____ makes it difficult to sleep.

- A. that/which B. where/which C. that/that D. which/which

Question 31 [573405]: The girl _____ was awarded a scholarship.

- A. winning the competition B. won the competition
C. which won the competition D. to win the competition

Question 32 [573406]: Pamela was the only person _____ him.

- A. realizing B. realized C. who is realized D. to realize

Question 33 [573407]: All the astronauts _____ the earth in space capsules are weightless.

- A. orbiting B. orbited C. to orbit D. who orbits

Question 34 [573408]: The party, _____ she didn't go, was extremely joyful.

- A. at that B. at which C. to that D. to which

Question 35 [573409]: The Titanic, _____ sank in 1922, was supposed to be unsinkable.

- A. whose B. that C. which D. who

Question 36 [573410]: George has a lot of milk in the fridge, _____ he hasn't drunk yet.

- A. most of that B. most of these C. most of which D. which most of them

Question 37 [573411]: The new hospital, _____ will start constructing next year, is expected to have 3000 rooms.

- A. what B. where C. when D. which

Question 38 [573412]: She's one of those people _____ love to be the center of attention.

- A. whom B. what C. who D. which

Question 39 [573413]: The park _____ we used to play as children has been renovated.

- A. which B. in where C. that D. at which

Question 40 [573414]: He finally realized the moment _____ he had made a mistake.

- A. where B. why C. when D. who

Exercise 3. Combine two sentences using relative clauses.

Tra ID Đề [5215] - Tra ID Video [5216]

Question 1 [573415]: This man is an IT developer. He lives next door.

→

Question 2 [573416]: The book was a lovely story. I was reading it yesterday.

→

Question 3 [573417]: The boy was Tom. I met him at school yesterday.

→

Question 4 [573418]: Miami often has hurricanes. My aunt lives here.

→

Question 5 [573419]: The man is very rich. His car is a Ferrari.

→

Question 6 [573420]: The flight was canceled. We were going to take it.

→

Question 7 [573421]: The manager employed the violinist. Sarah introduced him.

→

Question 8 [573422]: We stayed at Moonlight Hotel. We first met here.

→

Question 9 [573423]: Christmas is a special occasion in Western countries. Christmas happens in December.

→

Question 10 [573424]: Elly sent me a letter. It was very funny.

→

Question 11 [573425]: Elly sent me a letter. She is very funny.

→

Question 12 [573426]: Jim plays the main character in the film. His mom is the director.

→

Question 13 [573427]: The bakery sells delicious pastries. I visit it every weekend.

→

Question 14 [573428]: My uncle bought a boat. The boat costs thirty thousand dollars.

→

Question 15 [573429]: The doctor is very famous. My mother knows him very well.

→

Exercise 4. Use reduced relative clauses in place of the relative clauses.

Tra ID Đề [5217] - Tra ID Video [5218]

Question 1 [573430]: The book that I borrowed from the library was incredibly informative.

→

Question 2 [573431]: Trump Building, which was built in 1930, has 58 floors.

→

Question 3 [573432]: She was the last person that was interviewed this morning.

→

Question 4 [573433]: The car which was parked outside had a flat tire.

→

Question 5 [573434]: Mr. Parker is the most suitable manager who can take on this job.

→

Question 6 [573435]: The plays which were written by William Shakespeare are interesting.

→

Question 7 [573436]: Tom was the last student who left the room.

→

Question 8 [573437]: The sport event which was held in 2014 in Brazil were World Cup.

→

Question 9 [573438]: Uncle Ho, who was the first president of Vietnam, is a symbol of patriotism.

→

Question 10 [573439]: The man who was caught by the police last night was a criminal.

→

Question 11 [573440]: I stayed in a cozy room which overlooked the garden.

→

Question 12 [573441]: The boy who was attacked by a dog was taken to hospital.

→

Question 13 [573442]: Jack is the first person who was chosen for the team.

→

Question 14 [573443]: The people that exercised every day lost the most weight.

→

Question 15 [573444]: The elephant, which was born in the local zoo, was a female.

→

CITY LIFE

1. TỔNG HỢP TỪ VỰNG CẦN NHỚ

STT	Từ	Từ loại	Nghĩa
1	accident	n	<i>tai nạn</i>
2	apartment	n	<i>căn hộ</i>
3	asset	n	<i>của cải, tài sản</i>
4	attract	v	<i>thu hút</i>
	attractive	adj	<i>hấp dẫn, thu hút</i>
5	authority	n	<i>chính quyền</i>
6	ban	v	<i>cấm</i>
	= forbid	v	<i>cấm</i>
7	bustling	adj	<i>náo nhiệt</i>
	hustle and bustle	phr	<i>xô bồ, náo nhiệt</i>
8	city planner	np	<i>người quy hoạch</i>
9	commuter	n	<i>người di chuyển</i>
10	concrete jungle	np	<i>khu vực nhiều tòa nhà cao tầng</i>
11	construct	v	<i>xây dựng</i>
	construction	n	<i>việc xây dựng</i>
	convenient	adj	<i>thuận tiện</i>
12	>< inconvenient	adj	<i>>< bất tiện</i>
13	the cost of living	phr	<i>chi phí sinh hoạt</i>
14	crime	n	<i>tội ác</i>
	criminal	n	<i>tội phạm (người)</i>
15	crowded	adj	<i>đông đúc</i>
16	charge	v	<i>sạc</i>
17	discount	n	<i>sự giảm giá</i>
18	downtown	n	<i>trung tâm (đô thị)</i>
	>< suburb	n	<i>ngoại ô</i>
19	drawback	n	<i>bất cập</i>
20	dusty	adj	<i>đầy bụi</i>
21	(city) dweller	n	<i>cư dân</i>
22	easy-going	adj	<i>thoải mái</i>
23	eco-friendly	adj	<i>thân thiện với môi trường</i>
24	electric	adj	<i>dùng điện</i>

	electrical electricity	adj n	(liên quan) điện điện
25	exhaust	n	khí thải
26	facility	n	cơ sở vật chất
27	get around	vp	thăm quan xung quanh
28	healthcare	n	chăm sóc sức khỏe
29	homeless	adj	vô gia cư
30	implement	V	thực hiện, tiến hành
31	individual	n	cá nhân
32	itchy	adj	ngứa
33	leftover	n	đồ ăn thừa
34	liveable (livable)	adj	đáng sống
35	lively	adj	sống động
36	loud	adj	to (âm thanh)
37	metro	n	hệ thống tàu điện ngầm
38	modern	adj	hiện đại
39	narrow	adj	hẹp
40	noise noisy	n adj	tiếng ồn ồn ào
41	opportunity = chance	n n	cơ hội cơ hội
42	owner	n	chủ sở hữu
43	pack	v	gói đồ
44	pavement = sidewalk	n n	vía hè vía hè
45	pedestrian	n	người đi bộ
46	population populous	n adj	dân số đông dân
47	potential	adj	tiềm năng
48	pricey	adj	đắt đỏ
49	public amenities	np	tiện ích công cộng
	public transport	np	phương tiện công cộng
50	>< private vehicle	np	>< phương tiện cá nhân
51	rapid	adj	nhanh chóng
52	reliable	adj	đáng tin cậy

53	resident	n	cư dân
54	rush hour	np	giờ cao điểm
55	security	n	bảo an, sự an toàn
56	silent	adj	im lặng
57	site	n	khu
58	skillful	adj	khéo léo
59	solution	n	giải pháp
60	stuck	adj	mắc kẹt
61	strange	adj	lạ lùng
	stranger	n	người lạ
62	traffic jam	np	tắc đường
	= traffic congestion	np	tắc đường
63	underground	n	tàu điện ngầm
64	urban	adj	đô thị
	>< rural	adj	>< vùng quê

2. TỔNG HỢP CẤU TRÚC CẦN NHỚ

STT	Cụm	Nghĩa
1	a lack of sth = lack sth	thiếu
2	be packed with sth	chật ních với
3	carry out	tiến hành
4	cut down on	cắt giảm
5	enable sb to V	cho phép, trao khả năng cho ai làm gì
6	encourage sb to V	khuyến khích ai làm gì
7	expect to V	mong đợi
8	fancy + V-ing	muốn làm gì
9	make sb/sth + adj	làm ai/cái gì thế nào
10	succeed in + V-ing = manage to V	thành công làm gì/ cố gắng hoàn thành việc gì
11	struggle to v/with V-ing	khó khăn trong việc gì
12	turn sth into sth	biến cái gì thành cái gì

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5222] -Tra ID Video [5223]

Question 1 [574259]: Many people prefer living in _____ environments due to the convenience of amenities and services.

A. countryside

B. rural

C. urban

D. noisy

Question 2 [574260]: Tokyo is known for being one of the most _____ cities globally, with millions of residents.

- A. fresh B. urbanized C. populous D. industrialized

Question 3 [574261]: Rush hours make _____ worse because commuters flood the roads during peak travel times.

- A. pedestrian walking B. urban sprawl
C. cycling lanes D. traffic congestion

Question 4 [574262]: The shopping mall is _____ with holiday shoppers looking for gifts and coupons.

- A. packed B. full C. built D. pushed

Question 5 [574263]: The farmer coughed a lot when he worked in the _____ field.

- A. large B. rocky C. dusty D. fresh

Question 6 [574264]: In many urban areas, _____ plays an important role in reducing traffic congestion and pollution.

- A. private cars B. taxis C. bicycles D. public transport

Question 7 [574265]: The city planners are implementing measures to make the downtown area more _____ for residents and visitors.

- A. congested B. polluted C. liveable D. industrialized

Question 8 [574266]: Charging stations for _____ vehicles are being installed in urban centers to support the growing demand for clean transportation.

- A. diesel B. biogas C. electrical D. electric

Question 9 [574267]: The city's vibrant cultural scene helps to _____ tourists from all over the world.

- A. prevent B. attract C. ban D. stuck

Question 10 [574268]: Many people dream of escaping the hustle and bustle of the _____ and living in the countryside.

- A. concrete jungle B. hot desert C. rainforest D. mountain range

Question 11 [574269]: The new stadium _____ includes tennis courts, swimming pools, and a fitness center.

- A. park B. facility C. technology D. factory

Question 12 [574270]: Cities are finding solutions to improve _____ safety, such as adding crosswalks and widening sidewalks.

- A. bicycle B. pedestrian C. vehicle D. scooter

Question 13 [574271]: The construction site next to our apartment building has been very _____ lately.

- A. peaceful B. calm C. noisy D. silent

Question 14 [574272]: The school playground lacks the joyful sounds of children playing in the summer break, making it _____.

- A. silent B. calm C. noisy D. peaceful

Question 15 [574273]: The _____ system in major cities provides convenient transportation that can bring you from city to city easily in a short time.

- A. taxi B. bus C. underground D. vehicle

Question 16 [574274]: The apartment's location in the city center makes it more famous but also _____ compared to similar places in the suburbs.

- A. eco-friendly B. pricey C. affordable D. inexpensive

Question 17 [574275]: Mosquito bites often leave me with red, _____ bumps.

- A. loud B. soothing C. gentle D. itchy

Question 18 [574276]: Please make sure to book your tickets well _____ advance to secure your seats for the event.

- A. for B. on C. of D. in

Question 19 [574277]: Many cities struggle with providing needs for _____ people, including access to healthcare and public services.

- A. wealthy B. homeless C. employed D. lucky

Question 20 [574278]: The city's _____ attracts people from all over the world with its clubs, bars, and live music venues.

- A. daytime B. nightlife C. afternoon D. morning

Question 21 [574279]: The _____ atmosphere of the street market drew in visitors from all over the city.

- A. quiet B. silent C. lively D. liveable

Question 22 [574280]: Travelling long distances for work in a bustling city can leave individuals physically and mentally _____.

- A. refreshed B. attractive C. recharged D. exhausted

Question 23 [574281]: Renting a(n) _____ in the city can be more affordable than owning a house, especially for young people.

- A. castle B. apartment C. penthouse D. pavement

Question 24 [574282]: Many hi-tech cities are well-known for their impressive skyscrapers and other _____ architecture.

- A. historic B. traditional C. modern D. ancient

Question 25 [574283]: City residents should always be cautious when crossing busy streets to avoid _____.

- A. strangers B. accidents C. traffic lights D. incidents

Question 26 [574284]: In some cities, it is _____ to litter in public spaces to maintain cleanliness.

A. allowed B. forbidden C. permitted D. encouraged

Question 27 [574285]: City parks provide residents with _____ where they can relax and do the workout.

A. green spaces B. skyline C. gardening jobs D. natural resources

Question 28 [574286]: The city's _____ has been decreasing over the past few years, thanks to the efforts of police force.

A. traffic B. pollution C. crime D. noise

Question 29 [574287]: City residents have access to a variety of _____ services, including hospitals and clinics.

A. transportation B. entertainment C. healthcare D. education

Question 30 [574288]: The _____ system in the city is known for its extensive network connecting various neighborhoods.

A. tram B. ferry C. metro D. taxis

Exercise 2. Match the sentence halves.

Tra ID ĐỀ [5224] - Tra ID Video [5225]

1. Because of traffic congestion,	a. is quite strange to a countryman.
2. Residents move to suburbs	b. very attractive.
3. The hustle and bustle in pace of life	c. to have lower cost of living.
4. Besides modern public amenities,	d. residents are encouraged to limit private vehicles.
5. With the convenience of public transportation,	e. you can get around the city without worry about gasoline cost.

Answer:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
----	----	----	----	----

Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks with the suitable given words.

Tra ID ĐỀ [5226] - Tra ID Video [5227]

Paragraph 1

<i>authority</i>	<i>accidents</i>	<i>encourages</i>	<i>bustling</i>	<i>solutions</i>
------------------	------------------	-------------------	-----------------	------------------

In the city, life is always (1) _____ with activity in both daytime and nightlife. Sometimes, there are (2) _____ on the streets or problems with criminals, but the local (3) _____ is making efforts to keep everyone safe. Despite these challenges, the city (4) _____ people to chase their dreams and enjoy its vibrant atmosphere. Even though it can be crowded, there are always (5) _____ and excitement waiting around every corner.

Paragraph 2

<i>liveable</i>	<i>facilities</i>	<i>convenient</i>	<i>noise</i>	<i>enjoyable</i>
-----------------	-------------------	-------------------	--------------	------------------

People in the city have busy lives and are always on the move. Because it's (1) _____ and there are plenty of activities to do, they decided to live there. A pleasant park or a reliable transit may

sometimes make a place feel more (2) _____. With all the traffic and pollution, though, you may occasionally develop a runny (3) _____. Cities nevertheless provide all (4) _____ you want. Stores, schools, and entertainment venues are all present. Therefore, city living is (5) _____ even with a few issues!

Paragraph 3

<i>rooftop gardens</i>	<i>limit</i>	<i>rush hour</i>	<i>public amenities</i>	<i>opportunities</i>
------------------------	--------------	------------------	-------------------------	----------------------

Urban life is noisy and dynamic, with its population seeking out new (1)and connections. As cities work to balance development and preservation, eco-friendly ideas - from (2)to renewable energy projects - are becoming more and more important among the concrete jungles. With the growth of cities, (3)such as parks, shopping malls and public transportation networks offer a comfortable pace of life. However, (4) continues to be a nightmare of commuters, leading to congestion on many routes. Governments are implementing some new laws to (5)the existence of private vehicles.

Exercise 4. Rewrite the following sentences by using the word in the brackets.

Tra ID Đè [52281- Tra ID Video [5229]

Question 1 [574289]: The concert hall was filled with excited fans waiting for the performance. (PACKED)

→ The concert hall

Question 2 [574290]: The city has reduced the crime rate successfully. (MANAGE)

→ The city

Question 3 [574291]: Residents of the city are trying to decrease using cars to reduce traffic jam. (CUT)

→ Residents

Question 4 [574292]: Many urban dwellers find it difficult to afford housing due to high rent prices. (WITH)

→ Many urban dwellers

Question 5 [574293]: The museum was changed into a stadium by the local authority. (TURN)

→ The local authority

Question 6 [574294]: Are you interested in grabbing a meal after work? (FANCY)

→

Question 7 [574295]: The coach inspired the team to try their best. (ENCOURAGED)

→ The team

Question 8 [574296]: Homeless people usually do not have enough money to buy food. (LACK)

→ Homeless people

Question 9 [574297]: She managed to finish the marathon despite the difficult weather conditions. (IN)

→ She

Question 10 [574298]: She had a hard time understanding the traffic system. (STRUGGLED)

→ She

Exercise 5. Write one suitable word in each blank.

Tra ID Đề [5232] - Tra ID Video [5233]

Question 1 [583472]:

- a. However, the noise and congestion of city life can be overwhelming for some people.
- b. Additionally, the availability of public transportation and various services can make daily life more convenient.
- c. Living in a big city has both advantages and disadvantages.
- d. Therefore, you should think carefully before deciding to live in a big city.
- e. One of the biggest advantages of urban living is the access to a wide range of amenities and entertainment options.
- f. The higher living cost is also a problem if you want to live there for a long time.

A. c-e-a-b-f-d B. c-f-a-e-b-d C. c-f-b-a-e-d D. c-e-b-a-f-d

Question 2 [583473]:

- a. Accessing to quality healthcare facilities is the third advantage, with numerous hospitals available for medical needs.
- b. Therefore, it allows residents to enjoy diverse dining and shopping experiences.
- c. Living in the city provides a lot of conveniences to our lives.
- d. Additionally, urban areas often have a wide variety of restaurants and shops.
- e. First, cities offer excellent public transportation systems, making it easier to commute and travel without needing a personal vehicle.
- f. In short, living in the city adds many comforts to our life including commuting, cultural experiences and public amenities.

A. c-e-a-d-b-f B. e-d-c-a-b-f C. c-e-d-b-a-f D. c-e-b-a-d-f

Question 3 [583474]:

- a. Lastly, urban areas can be crowded, making public spaces and services less accessible and less enjoyable.
- b. In fact, it can take twice as long to get to work if you are stuck in traffic.
- c. In summary, while city living offers many benefits, it also comes with disadvantages such as pollution, high living costs, and congestion.
- d. To start with, cities often suffer from high levels of air and noise pollution, which can negatively impact residents' health and quality of life.
- e. Living in urban areas can pose unpredictable dangers for people.
- f. Traffic congestion is another common problem, leading to longer commute times and increased stress for city dwellers.

A. e-f-d-b-a-c B. e-d-f-b-a-c C. e-d-f-a-b-c D. e-d-b-f-a-c

Chuyên đề XV ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU

MODEL VERBS

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Động từ khuyết thiếu tuy là động từ nhưng không chỉ hành động mà bổ sung ý nghĩa cho động từ chính. Tất cả các động từ đi sau động từ khuyết thiếu luôn ở dạng nguyên thể.

Động từ khuyết thiếu	Cách dùng	Ví dụ
can	1. Diễn tả khả năng, năng khiếu, (có thể) 2. Lời xin phép, cho phép	1. He can swim. (<i>Anh ta có thể bơi.</i>) 2. Can I have a piece of cake? (<i>Tôi có thể có một miếng bánh không?</i>)
could	1. Quá khứ của can (có thể) 2. Lời xin phép, cho phép	1. I could eat 3 bowls of Pho when I was 16 (<i>Tôi có thể ăn 3 tô phở khi tôi 16 tuổi.</i>) 2. Could I ask you a question? (<i>Tôi có thể hỏi bạn một câu được không?</i>)
must	1. Phải làm gì nhưng do bản thân tự nhận thức 2. Mustn't: cấm, không được 3. Suy đoán gần như chắc chắn (chắc hẳn)	1. She must do her homework. (<i>Cô ấy phải làm bài tập.</i>) 2. You mustn't step on grass. (<i>Bạn không được dẫm lên cỏ.</i>) 3. Leo must be sleeping. (<i>Leo chắc hẳn đang ngủ.</i>)
have to	1. Phải làm gì nhưng do nội quy, luật pháp... quy định 2. Phủ định: don't have to (không cần thiết)	1. Students have to wear uniform to school. (<i>Học sinh phải mặc đồng phục đến trường.</i>) 2. Peter doesn't have to attend the meeting. (<i>Peter không cần phải tham dự cuộc họp.</i>)
should	1. Nên làm gì (mức độ nhẹ hơn must và have to)	1. There shouldn't be many people at the beach today. (<i>Không nên có nhiều người ở bãi biển vào ngày hôm nay.</i>)
ought to	1. Nên làm gì Dạng phủ định: ought not to	1. Ought she to call the police? (<i>Cô ấy có nên gọi cảnh sát không?</i>)
will	1. Dự đoán sự việc trong tương lai (sẽ) 2. Will you ...? dùng để đề nghị ai giúp mình.	1. The next Olympic Games will be in London. (<i>Thế vận hội Olympic tiếp theo sẽ ở Luân Đôn.</i>)

		2. Will you pass me the salt? (<i>Bạn đưa tôi lọ muối được không?</i>)
shall	1. Dùng để xin ý kiến, gợi ý 2. Shall I ...? dùng để đề nghị mình giúp ai Shall chỉ dùng với ngôi thứ nhất (I, we)	1. Where shall we visit first? (<i>Chúng ta nên ghé thăm nơi nào trước.</i>) 2. Shall I lift the box for you? (<i>Tôi có thể nâng chiếc hộp giúp bạn chứ?</i>)
may	1. Có thể xảy ra nhưng không chắc (có lẽ) 2. May I...? dùng để xin phép	1. He may bring me some snacks. (<i>Anh ta có lẽ sẽ mang cho tôi chút đồ ăn vặt.</i>) 2. May I go out? (<i>Cho em xin phép ra ngoài?</i>)
might	1. Có thể xảy ra nhưng không chắc (có lẽ) 2. Might là quá khứ của may trong trường hợp lùi thì trong câu tường thuật	1. Kevin might be late for school. (<i>Kevin có lẽ sẽ muộn học.</i>) 2. 'That may not be true', she said. → She said that it might not be true.
need	1. Vừa là động từ thường (need to V) 2. vừa là động từ khuyết thiếu	1. You need to drink the medicine that the doctor gave you. (<i>Bạn cần uống thuốc bác sĩ đưa.</i>) 2. You needn't go to school because today is Sunday. (<i>Bạn không cần đến trường vì hôm nay là chủ nhật.</i>)
had better	1. Đưa ra lời khuyên (tốt hơn là)	It's cold outside. You had better put on your coat. (<i>Bên ngoài khá lạnh. Bạn tốt hơn là nên mặc áo khoác vào.</i>)

★ Lưu ý: “Can” không có dạng ở tương lai nên ta dùng “will be able to V” để nói về khả năng

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, c or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5235] - Tra ID Video [5236]

Question 1 [573470]: You _____ eat so much junk food. It's not good for your health.

A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. could D. may

Question 2 [573471]: You _____ park your car here. It's a no-parking zone.

A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. can D. may

Question 3 [573472]: Mia _____ be the one who took my book. She was the last person in the room.

A. must B. might C. could D. should

Question 4 [573473]: You _____ wear the uniform five days a week. That is the new rule.

- A. should B. must C. have to D. can

Question 5 [573474]: She _____ clean the floor because we just bought a vacuum robot.

- A. shouldn't B. needn't C. mustn't D. can't

Question 6 [573475]: The air conditioner in the office broke down yesterday, so I go to the coffee shop to work

- A. must B. should C. have to D. ought to

Question 7 [573476]: If she knows he is addicted to gambling, she _____ be very upset.

- A. must B. should C. have to D. need

Question 8 [573477]: I _____ fix the roof myself in 1 or 2 hour, so you _____ wait for me.

- A. can/mustn't B. can/needn't C. should/mustn't D. should/needn't

Question 9 [573478]: Lisa has an earache. She'd better _____ to see the doctor.

- A. go B. going C. to go D. to going

Question 10 [573479]: The sign says "Keep out!". We _____ enter this area.

- A. should B. mustn't C. needn't D. must

Question 11 [573480]: Remember to bring the umbrella. It _____ rain.

- A. might B. must C. has to D. should

Question 12 [573481]: You _____ drive so fast because we have a lot of time to get to the airport.

- A. haven't to B. shouldn't C. mustn't D. ought to not

Question 13 [573482]: Children _____ eat too much junk food. It's not good for their health.

- A. shouldn't B. mustn't C. can't D. must

Question 14 [573483]: Bring along a camera with you. You _____ need to take some photos.

- A. may B. can C. must D. should

Question 15 [573484]: In the next morning, we will _____ open the website for local artisans to sell the products.

- A. can B. able to C. be able to D. can be

Question 16 [573485]: _____ you help me with my homework?

- A. Have to B. Should C. Shall D. Need

Question 17 [573486]: Hany's been driving all day – he _____ be tired.

- A. might B. must C. should D. have to

Question 18 [573487]: Children play in the kitchen because they _____ hurt themselves.

- A. should/can B. shouldn't/can C. mustn't/can D. mustn't/may

Question 19 [573488]: Why is that man looking around like that? – He _____ be lost.

- A. must B. could C. should D. can

Question 20 [573489]: \$70 for two ice-creams! That's crazy! This bill _____ be right!

- A. can B. could C. can't D. couldn't

Question 21 [573490]: You look exhausted. You _____ stay up so late.

- A. can't B. shouldn't C. mustn't D. may not

Question 22 [573491]: Where is Linda. She has never been late for work. She _____ miss the bus.

- A. must B. should C. can D. doesn't have to

Question 23 [573492]: You _____ apply for the job before the deadline passes.

- A. must B. will C. would D. may

Question 24 [573493]: We _____ leave early if we want to avoid the traffic.

- A. will B. could C. must D. should

Question 25 [573494]: _____ you give me a hand?

- A. Will B. Should C. Need D. May

Question 26 [573495]: What you _____ is a nice hot bowl of soup. It's so cold outside.

- A. will B. need C. must D. have to

Question 27 [573496]: Liam _____ be very tall to play basketball. Everyone in the team is over 180 centimeters.

- A. may B. has to C. should D. must

Question 28 [573497]: I _____ speak French fluently when I was younger.

- A. could B. can C. would D. had to

Question 29 [573498]: _____ I open the window? It's stuffy here.

- A. Need B. Shall C. Will D. Would

Question 30 [573499]: Medicine _____ be free to every citizen.

- A. can B. must C. ought to D. need

Exercise 2. Rewrite the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one, using modal verbs in the brackets.

Tra ID Đè [5237] - Tra ID Video [5238]

Question 1 [573500]: The doctor told him to have less sugar and soft drinks. **(SHOULD)**

→

Question 2 [573501]: Smoking is not allowed in hospitals. **(MUSTN'T)**

→

Question 3 [573502]: It isn't necessary for you to bring an umbrella. **(NEEDN'T)**

→

Question 4 [573503]: You'd better protect yourself from COVID-19. **(SHOULD)**

→

Question 5 [573504]: There is no need for you to visit your uncle tomorrow. **(HAVE TO)**

→

Question 6 [573505]: It's possible that he will redecorate his house this year. **(MIGHT)**

→

Question 7 [573506]: I'm sure that painting is very interesting. **(MUST)**

→

Question 8 [573507]: It's forbidden to park here. **(MUSTN'T)**

→

Question 9 [573508]: It's your obligation to obey the traffic laws. **(HAVE TO)**

→

Question 10 [573509]: Yuuki managed to finish the project herself. **(ABLE)**

→

Chuyên đề CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ

XVI PHRASAL VERB

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Cụm động từ là sự kết hợp giữa một động từ và trạng từ hoặc giới từ hoặc có khi cả hai. Nghĩa của cụm động từ thường sẽ có ý nghĩa không giống nghĩa của những từ đơn lẻ cấu tạo thành nó.

Ví dụ: Từ ‘take’ khi đứng đơn lẻ mang nghĩa là lấy. Tuy nhiên, khi kết hợp với giới từ ‘after’, chúng ta được cụm động từ ‘take after’ mang nghĩa là trông giống với ai.

Dưới đây là một số cụm động từ xuất hiện trong chương trình học và hay xuất hiện trong các đề thi.

STT	Cụm động từ	Nghĩa
1	ask for ask sb out	<i>hỏi xin</i> <i>mời ai đó đi chơi</i>
2	break down break in(to) break up	<i>bị hỏng (máy móc, xe cộ)</i> <i>đột nhập</i> <i>chia tay</i>
3	bring back bring up	<i>gợi nhớ lại</i> <i>nuôi nấng</i>
4	build up	<i>phát triển/làm tăng lên</i>
5	call off call out	<i>hủy</i> <i>gọi to, hét to</i>
6	calm down	<i>bình tĩnh</i>
7	care about care for	<i>quan tâm</i> <i>chăm sóc</i>
8	carry on carry out	<i>tiếp tục</i> <i>tiến hành</i>
9	come across come down with come out come round come up come up with	<i>tình cờ gặp</i> <i>mắc bệnh (nhẹ)</i> <i>lộ ra</i> <i>ghé thăm/hỏi tình</i> <i>xảy ra/xuất hiện (thông tin)</i> <i>nảy ra (ý tưởng, giải pháp)</i>
10	cross out	<i>gạch bỏ</i>
11	cut down cut down (on) cut in cut off	<i>đốn hạ</i> <i>cắt giảm</i> <i>ngắt lời/cắt ngang</i> <i>cắt nguồn (điện)</i>
12	do over	<i>làm lại</i>

	do up	<i>tân trang</i>
13	dress up	<i>diện đồ/hóa trang</i>
14	drop in (on) drop out (of)	<i>ghé qua, tạt qua</i> <i>bỏ dở (học hành, thi cử)</i>
15	fall behind fall for sb/sth fall out with sb	<i>tụt lại, chậm lại</i> <i>mê đắm ai, cái gì</i> <i>ngहि chơi với ai</i>
16	fill in fill out fill up	<i>điền vào đơn</i> <i>điền thông tin/lên cân</i> <i>đổ đầy, làm đầy</i>
17	find out	<i>tìm ra</i>
18	get around get away (from) get by get in >< get out get on >< get off get on/along (with sb) get over get through getup	<i>đi lại</i> <i>rời khỏi/đi du lịch</i> <i>xoay sở kiếm sống</i> <i>lên xe >< xuống xe (xe hơi, taxi...)</i> <i>lên >< xuống (xe buýt, tàu, máy bay...)</i> <i>có mối quan hệ tốt (với ai)</i> <i>hồi phục/tốt hơn sau một thời gian khó khăn vượt qua, hoàn thành</i> <i>thức dậy</i>
19	go down with go for (a walk, a run...) go in for go off go on go out go over	<i>mắc bệnh</i> <i>đi (bộ, chạy)</i> <i>tham gia</i> <i>reo (chuông, báo thức)/ nổ (bom)/ hỏng (đồ ăn)</i> <i>tiếp tục</i> <i>đi ra ngoài</i> <i>rà soát lại</i>
20	give up give away	<i>từ bỏ, bỏ cuộc</i> <i>cho đi</i>
21	hand down hand in	<i>truyền lại, truyền nghề</i> <i>nộp</i>
22	keep up with keep out (of) = keep away	<i>theo kịp</i> <i>tránh xa khỏi</i>
23	let sb down	<i>làm ai đó thất vọng</i>
24	look after	<i>chăm sóc</i>

	look around look back look down on sb look for look forward to +V-ing look in (on) look into look out look up look up to	ghé thăm/nhìn quanh hồi tưởng coi thường ai tìm kiếm mong đợi ghé thăm ai (nhANH chóng) xem xét kĩ, điều tra coi chừng (cảnh báo nguy hiểm) tra cứu kính trọng
25	make up make up for	dựng chuyện/làm hòa/chuẩn bị bù lại
26	meet up with	gặp ai (hẹn trước)
27	note down	ghi lại
28	pass down pass away	truyền lại qua đời
29	pick up	nhặt/nắm được/đón ai đó
30	pull down pull over	kéo đổ, sập dừng xe (vào lề)
31	put away put on put off put out put up with	dọn đi, cất đi mặc trì hoãn dập tắt (lửa) chịu đựng
32	run into run out of = use up	tình cờ gặp ai hết, cạn kiệt
33	save up	tiết kiệm
34	set up set off	thành lập khởi hành
35	see sb off	tiễn ai đó
36	show up = turn up show off	xuất hiện khoe khoang
37	speed up >< slow down	tăng tốc, đẩy nhanh >< chậm lại
38	stand for stand out	viết tắt của nổi bật lên
39	start up	khởi nghiệp

40	stay up	thức
41	take after take away take care of take down take in take off take on take over take up	giống mang đi chăm sóc dỡ xuống/hạ xuống lừa gạt/hiểu cởi (quần áo)/cắt cánh đảm nhiệm/thuê tiếp quản bắt đầu một sở thích, thói quen
42	turn on >< turn off turn up >< turn down turn up turn down	bật >< tắt vặn to >< vặn nhỏ (âm lượng) xuất hiện từ chối
43	throw away	vứt đi
44	try out try on	thử mặc thử
45	use up	dùng hết
46	wake up	tỉnh dậy
47	wash up	rửa/cuốn trôi

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5240] - Tra BD Video [5241]

Question 1 [573510]: Could you please _____ the music? It's too loud.

- A. turn off B. turn down C. turn up D. turn over

Question 2 [573511]: They decided to _____ their old car and buy a new one.

- A. get off B. get on C. get rid of D. get out

Question 3 [573512]: We should _____ the plan before presenting it to the boss.

- A. go over B. go in C. go out D. go for

Question 4 [573513]: The new restaurant _____ a lot of positive reviews from customers.

- A. brought in B. brought up C. brought out D. brought down

Question 5 [573514]: I need to _____ this report by tomorrow morning.

- A. hand out B. hand over C. hand in D. hand down

Question 6 [573515]: The fire alarm _____ just as we were about to start the presentation.

- A. went off B. went on C. went up D. went for

Question 7 [573516]: I need to _____ these shoes to see if they fit properly.

A. put out B. put off C. try on D. make up

Question 8 [573517]: I need to _____ my passport number on the application form.

A. fill out B. fill up C. fill in D. fill away

Question 9 [573518]: Sarah _____ her old clothes to charity to support the victims of the tsunami.

A. gave up B. gave out C. gave away D. gave in

Question 10 [573519]: Mark _____ a new hobby last year and now he's really into photography.

A. took up B. took over C. took in D. took down

Question 11 [573520]: The students are looking forward _____ a break after their exams.

A. will have B. to have C. to having D. having

Question 12 [573521]: The company _____ a new marketing strategy to attract younger customers.

A. come up with B. come across C. come into D. come out

Question 13 [573522]: Julia had to _____ the meeting because she was feeling unwell.

A. put out B. call off C. get out D. look into

Question 14 [573523]: Sarah _____ her fear of heights and went skydiving for the first time.

A. got over B. got through C. got by D. got out

Question 15 [573524]: The scientists plan to _____ experiments to test the effectiveness of the new drug.

A. call off B. turn down C. look over D. carry out

Question 16 [573525]: Wait a minute! I need to _____ my new dress before we go out.

A. put on B. take up C. wear out D. note down

Question 17 [573526]: I _____ the words online to understand the message of the song.

A. look into B. look for C. look up D. look down

Question 18 [573527]: We gathered at the airport to _____ our friends _____ who were leaving for their vacation.

A. look/away B. see/up C. look/off D. see/off

Question 19 [573528]: My husband has decided to set _____ a business on his own.

A. set up B. look up C. set D. make up

Question 20 [573529]: You should _____ the lights after leaving the practice room.

A. turn on B. turn off C. turn down D. turn up

Question 21 [573530]: I can meet up with you in Hanoi if the plane _____ before 6:30.

A. takes off B. gets on C. puts on D. finds out

Question 22 [573531]: The children were excited to _____ as their favorite superheroes for Halloween.

A. take in B. use up C. come over D. dress up

Question 23 [573532]: Despite facing many challenges, he doesn't _____ his dream of becoming a musician.

A. give in B. give up C. give out D. give away

Question 24 [573533]: Linda and John _____ after realizing they wanted different things in life.

A. broke down B. broke up C. broke in D. broke off

Question 25 [573534]: They are going to _____ tomorrow. They have planned for the trip for a long time.

A. see off B. set off C. call off D. go off

Question 26 [573535]: Before boarding their flight, passengers must _____ at the airline counter to receive their boarding passes.

A. check in B. check out C. check up D. check for

Question 27 [573536]: Her daughter _____ her so much that I cannot tell the differences between them.

A. looks after B. takes after C. comes after D. goes after

Question 28 [573537]: Despite the rain, the children decided to _____ playing soccer in the park.

A. carry on B. take on C. carry out D. get out

Question 29 [573538]: While in town, they decided to _____ at their friend's house for a quick visit.

A. call off B. drop in C. call in D. drop off

Question 30 [573539]: While shopping downtown, Sarah unexpectedly _____ an old friend from university.

A. ran for B. ran across C. ran into D. ran out

Question 31 [573540]: Go _____ studying English despite any problems.

A. out B. on C. up D. off

Question 32 [573541]: It's necessary to _____ on time; or else, you will lose the job.

A. turn out B. show up C. show off D. turn over

Question 33 [573542]: He is _____ by his uncle after his parents had died in a fire.

A. taken after B. brought up C. passed away D. turned off

Question 34 [573543]: The thieves managed to _____ the bank and steal the diamonds.

A. break up B. break into C. break out D. break down

Question 35 [573544]: To improve her health, Rachel decided to _____ sweets and fatty foods.

A. cut off B. cut in C. cut down on D. cut through

Question 36 [573545]: She forgot to _____ her library books on time, so she had to pay a fine.

A. fill out B. go for C. hand in D. look for

Question 37 [573546]: He politely _____ the invitation to the party as he had other plans already.

A. turned over B. turned down C. turned in D. turned up

Question 38 [573547]: Please _____ some milk on your way home from work.

A. pick on B. pick out C. pick up D. pick off

Question 39 [573548]: The firefighters were able to quickly _____ the fire before it spread to other

buildings.

- A. put up B. put down C. put out D. put off

Question 40 [573549]: The restaurant offers a discount if you _____ your order instead of dining in.

- A. take away B. take off C. take in D. take up

Question 41 [573550]: The factory _____ after operating for over 50 years in the community.

- A. put off B. closed down C. took down D. look into

Question 42 [573551]: The washing machine suddenly _____ just before the laundry cycle was complete.

- A. ran out B. broke down C. broke into D. ran into

Question 43 [573552]: The team didn't _____ and managed to score a last-minute goal to win the match.

- A. give off B. give in C. give out D. give up

Question 44 [573553]: Tom suddenly _____ a bad cold and had to stay home from work.

- A. came down with B. came up with C. came across D. came over

Question 45 [573554]: The flight was delayed for two hours before it finally _____.

- A. took in B. took out C. took over D. took off

Question 46 [573555]: They _____ time to finish the project before the deadline.

- A. ran into B. ran down C. ran out of D. ran over

Question 47 [573556]: Whose turn is it to _____ the kids from school?

- A. carry on B. pick up C. bring up D. call off

Question 48 [573557]: The tradition of making handmade conical hats has been _____ through generations in her family.

- A. passed down B. given up C. taken in D. brought up

Question 49 [573558]: She finds it hard to _____ her classmates in math because the lessons are becoming more complex.

- A. keep up with B. keep on with C. keep out of D. keep down with

Question 50 [573559]: He needs to _____ his glasses to read the small print.

- A. put out B. put away C. put on D. put up

Question 51 [573560]: It's important to _____ your colleagues to create a productive work environment.

- A. get up B. get over C. get on with D. get up with

Question 52 [573561]: He accidentally _____ an old friend at the airport after years of not seeing each other.

- A. came in B. came by C. came over D. came across

Question 53 [573562]: They _____ early in the morning to catch the sunrise at the beach.

- A. set out B. set off C. set up D. set down

Question 54 [573563]: She decided to _____ a walk in the park instead of going to the gym.

- A. go for B. got in C. take in D. turn up

Question 55 [573564]: In the word "UNESCO", what does the "U" _____?

- A. call for B. stand for C. stand out D. call off

Question 56 [573565]: She decided to _____ more about the company before accepting the job offer.

- A. look for B. get on C. find out D. take up

Question 57 [573566]: He felt that his colleagues _____ him because he was new to the team. They think he does not have any experience.

- A. looked up to B. looked down on C. looked for D. looked after

Question 58 [573567]: To avoid being late, she decided to _____ her morning routine.

- A. slow down B. speed up C. put off D. break down

Question 59 [573568]: During the storm, the electricity was _____ for several hours.

- A. take out B. take off C. cut down D. cut off

Question 60 [573569]: The melody of the song _____ me _____ the peaceful sound of ocean waves.

- A. reminded/of B. took/about C. reminded/about D. took/up

Question 61 [573570]: The tradition of wood carving has been _____ through generations in their family.

- A. passed through B. passed over C. handed down D. handed in

Question 62 [573571]: They wanted to _____ their living room to create a more modern look.

- A. take over B. take in C. do with D. do up

Question 63 [573572]: She felt terrible when her best friend _____ her _____ by not attending her birthday party.

- A. see/off B. take/down C. let/down D. show/up

Question 64 [573573]: The teacher asked the students to _____ any incorrect answers on their test papers.

- A. get through B. take down C. cross out D. cross through

Question 65 [573574]: Don't forget to _____ at the next bus stop.

- A. get out B. get off C. get by D. get in

Question 66 [573575]: Jane promised to _____ her friend's cat while she was away on vacation.

- A. look up B. look after C. look out D. look into

Question 67 [573576]: He always _____ advice when faced with difficult decisions.

- A. asks for B. asks out C. takes on D. takes over

Question 68 [573577]: The tradition of _____ old traditions has kept the community connected over the years.

- A. handing in B. passing over C. handing down D. passing through

Question 69 [573578]: They had to _____ the cold weather during their camping trip in the mountains.

A. catch up with B. put up with C. meet up with D. keep up with

Question 70 [573579]: He felt disappointed when she _____ his invitation to the dance.

A. turned off B. turned on C. turned down D. turned in

Topic 8

TOURISM

1. TỔNG HỢP TỪ VỰNG CẦN NHỚ

STT	Từ	Từ loại	Nghĩa
1	accommodation	n	nơi ở lại
2	ancient	adj	cổ xưa
3	appealing	adj	cuốn hút
4	budget	n	kinh phí
5	brochure	n	tờ quảng cáo
6	convenience store	np	cửa hàng tiện lợi
7	crowded	adj	đông đúc
8	cruise	n	chuyến du ngoạn (biển)
9	delicious = tasty	adj	ngon
10	destination	n	điểm đến
11	domestic	adj	nội địa
12	embassy	n	đại sứ quán
13	entrance ticket	np	vé vào cổng
14	estimate	v	ước tính
15	fanny pack	np	túi đeo hông
16	fascinating	adj	thú vị, cuốn hút
17	fixed	adj	cố định
18	flexible	adj	linh hoạt
19	full of flavor	phr	đầy hương vị
20	gallery	n	triển lãm
21	holidaymaker	n	người đi nghỉ dưỡng
22	homestay	n	nhà nghỉ cùng dân địa phương
23	hop-on hop-off bus	np	xe buýt lên xuống nhiều địa điểm

24	hostel	n	<i>nhà trọ giá rẻ</i>
25	ideal	adj	<i>lý tưởng</i>
26	incredible	adj	<i>phi thường</i>
27	international	adj	<i>(thuộc) quốc tế</i>
28	itinerary	n	<i>lịch trình</i>
29	luxury	n	<i>sự sang trọng</i>
	luxurious	adj	<i>sang trọng</i>
30	monument	n	<i>tượng đài</i>
31	mouth-watering	adj	<i>ngon (đồ ăn)</i>
32	package holiday	np	<i>du lịch trọn gói</i>
33	pastry	n	<i>bánh ngọt</i>
34	peak season	np	<i>mùa cao điểm</i>
	>< low season		<i>>< mùa vắng khách</i>
35	pharmacy	n	<i>hiệu thuốc</i>
36	relaxing	adj	<i>thư giãn</i>
37	roller coaster	np	<i>tàu lượn siêu tốc</i>
38	ruinous	adj	<i>đô nát</i>
39	safari	n	<i>cuộc hành trình, đi săn</i>
40	self-guided	adj	<i>tự tổ chức</i>
41	sight	n	<i>cảnh đẹp</i>
42	smooth	adj	<i>mượt, trôi chảy</i>
43	socket adapter	np	<i>bộ chuyển đổi ổ cắm</i>
44	sunblock	n	<i>kem chống nắng</i>
	= sunscreen	n	<i>kem chống nắng</i>
45	tan	n	<i>vết rám nắng</i>
46	terraced field	np	<i>ruộng bậc thang</i>
47	tourist	n	<i>du khách</i>
48	tunnel	n	<i>đường hầm</i>
49	travel agency	np	<i>đại lý du lịch</i>
50	wander	v	<i>đi dạo</i>
51	waterfall	n	<i>thác nước</i>
52	well-known	adj	<i>nổi tiếng</i>

2. TỔNG HỢP CẤU TRÚC CẦN NHỚ

STT	Cụm	Nghĩa
1	get a notice about sth	<i>được thông báo về điều gì</i>
2	hunt for sth	<i>săn</i>

3	require sb to V	<i>yêu cầu ai làm gì</i>
4	on sb's own = by oneself	<i>tự làm</i>
5	be curious about sth	<i>tò mò về</i>
6	in exchange (for sth)	<i>đổi lại</i>
7	be amazed at sth	<i>kinh ngạc về</i>
8	be rich in	<i>giàu về</i>

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5245] - Tra ID Video [5246]

Question 1 [574299]: It's helpful to plan a(n) _____ that includes all the activities and sights you wish to visit.

- A. itinerary B. fanny pack C. homestay D. cruise

Question 2 [574300]: If you want to explore a country's wildlife, let's go on a _____, which offers a chance to see animals in their natural habitat.

- A. safari B. roller coaster C. tunnel D. business

Question 3 [574301]: After seeing the _____ pictures of the food, I couldn't wait to try it.

- A. unappealing B. tasteless C. boring D. mouth-watering

Question 4 [574302]: To protect yourself from the sun, you should apply _____ regularly during outdoor activities.

- A. shampoo B. shower gel C. sunblock D. cleanser

Question 5 [574303]: Tourists often seek for _____ experiences, which they can explore new places and enjoy activities that are not commonly found at home.

- A. unique B. luxurious C. ancient D. flexible

Question 6 [574304]: Tourists will receive a _____ at the airport or in hotels, which provides information about local attractions and activities.

- A. napkin B. brochure C. fanny pack D. socket adapter

Question 7 [574305]: Tokyo is a _____ city and people here have a fast pace of life.

- A. polluted B. crowded C. ancient D. ruinous

Question 8 [574306]: I will do this project for you in exchange _____ the flight ticket.

- A. to B. with C. for D. of

Question 9 [574307]: Tourists enjoy trying _____ foods during their travels, as they offer a taste of the local cuisine.

- A. fixed B. ancient C. flexible D. delicious

Question 10 [574308]: It's important for tourists to know the location of the _____ for assistance with visas, emergencies, and local information.

A. embassy B. gallery C. bakery D. stadium

Question 11 [574309]: If you're traveling during the _____ season, you may have to pay more for the flight tickets.

A. top B. low C. small D. peak

Question 12 [574310]: This _____ holiday to Bali includes a meal plan, a 5-star hotel and guided tours to enhance the overall travel experience.

A. self-guided B. packed C. package D. self-reliant

Question 13 [574311]: A _____ destination is often popular for its scenic beauty, cultural significance, or recreational activities.

A. well-known B. tasty C. relaxing D. flexible

Question 14 [574312]: Standing next to a _____ and hearing natural sounds will be a memorable experience.

A. pharmacy B. monument C. waterfall D. tunnel

Question 15 [574313]: I'd like to stay in _____ hotels that offer exceptional comfort and amenities.

A. luxurious B. ancient C. cheap D. local

Question 16 [574314]: To stay safe, you should carry a _____ that keeps your belongings.

A. brochure B. sunscreen C. sunglasses D. fanny pack

Question 17 [574315]: Travelers might _____ the breathtaking landscapes on their journey.

A. be required B. be amazed at C. be amazing at D. be curious about

Question 18 [574316]: Some tourists prefer to travel _____ to avoid the crowd of guided tours.

A. by their own B. on themselves C. by myself D. on their own

Question 19 [574317]: To get the best travel experience, many travelers _____ hidden gems and lesser-known attractions.

A. hunt to B. hunt in C. hunt with D. hunt for

Question 20 [574318]: You'd better book your _____ ticket in advance so we won't have to queue.

A. entrance B. pastry C. hostel D. embassy

Question 21 [574319]: A _____ is often chosen by travelers wanting to stay in a basic and cheap accommodation.

A. hostel B. hotel C. mansion D. castle

Question 22 [574320]: Tourists might choose a _____ tour, which allows visiting sites on their own.

A. self-guided tour B. package holiday C. shared tour D. travel agency

Question 23 [574321]: In recent years, there has been a growing trend in _____ holiday as people look to explore destinations closer to home.

A. international B. remote C. domestic D. business

Question 24 [574322]: A _____ allows travelers to live with a local family and experience the culture more closely.

A. hotel B. homestay C. resort D. hostel

Question 25 [574323]: Before planning a trip, remember to set a _____ to ensure you don't overspend.

A. schedule B. destination C. budget D. itinerary

Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks with the suitable given words.

Tra ID ĐỀ [5247] - Tra ID Video [5248]

Paragraph 1

<i>visit</i>	<i>respect</i>	<i>experience</i>
<i>weather</i>	<i>popular</i>	<i>maps</i>

Tourism is a (1) _____ activity around the world. Many people travel to (2) _____ new cultures, try different foods, and see famous landmarks. For example, in Paris, you can (3) _____ the Eiffel Tower, while in New York, you can see the Statue of Liberty. Tourists often use (4) _____ or smartphones to find their way and plan their activities. It's important to (5) _____ local customs and try to speak a few words in the local language. Before traveling, make sure to check the (6) _____ and pack accordingly. Remember to have fun and take lots of photos to remember your trip!

Paragraph 2

<i>challenges</i>	<i>key</i>	<i>influences</i>
<i>local</i>	<i>destinations</i>	<i>eco-friendly</i>

Tourism significantly (1) _____ economies and cultures worldwide. This thing boosts economies by creating jobs for (2) _____ people. However, it also presents (3) _____ such as environmental pollution. This problem can be solved in many ways, including (4) _____ accommodations and respect for local traditions. Balancing economic benefits with environmental issues is essential for ensuring that tourism remains a positive force for both (5) _____ and travelers. As the industry grows, maintaining this will be (6) _____ to its long-term success and sustainability.

Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks with the suitable form of the word in the bracket.

Tra ID ĐỀ [5249] - Tra ID video [5250]

Question 1 [574324]: Many _____ tourists come to this country to see famous landmarks and enjoy local food. (NATION)

Question 2 [574325]: The museum welcomes thousands of _____ every month. (VISIT)

Question 3 [574326]: A lot of travelers choose _____ hotels for a special vacation, enjoying fancy rooms and great services. (LUXURY)

Question 4 [574327]: cities like Paris and New York attract millions of tourists every year. (KNOW)

Question 5 [574328]: Beautiful beaches and exciting activities make a destination very _____ to tourists. (APPEAL)

Question 6 [574329]: We often find _____ stores helpful for buying snacks and essentials during their trips. (CONVENIENT)

Question 7 [574330]: Some attractions are less _____ early in the morning. (CROWD)

Question 8 [574331]: A _____ holiday is perfect for those who want an organized vacation experience. (PACK)

Question 9 [574332]: Maps and travel guides help visitors find the best tourist _____ in a city. (ATTRACT)

Question 10 [574333]: Choosing the right _____ for a vacation can make a big difference in your travel experience. (LOCATE)

Exercise 4. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct arrangement of the sentences to make a meaningful paragraph / letter for the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5251] - Tra ID video [5252]

Question 1 [583475]:

- a. Exploring new destinations can provide valuable cultural experiences and broaden one's knowledge.
- b. Many destinations also offer activities that are suitable for diverse interests.
- c. Tourism plays an important role in the local economy by creating jobs and generating profit.
- d. To decrease these effects, it's important for travelers to practice sustainable tourism and respect local cultures.
- e. However, tourism can also lead to negative impacts such as environmental degradation and over-tourism.

A. c-b-a-d-e B. c-a-b-e-d C. c-a-e-d-b D. a-b-c-e-d

Question 2 [583476]:

- a. In case of an emergency, you can base on those pieces of information.
- b. Firstly, before traveling, collect information about local emergency numbers and the location of the nearest hospital or embassy.
- c. Tourists should keep these safety instructions below in mind when they travel to other countries.
- d. Secondly, always carry a copy of your passport and important documents in case of loss or theft.
- e. Thirdly, it is important to follow local laws and customs to ensure a respectful and safe experience in the destination.

A. b-d-e-c-a B. c-b-a-d-e C. c-b-d-a-e D. b-d-a-e-c

Chuyên đề XVII LIÊN TỪ

CONJUNCTIONS

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

Liên từ là từ hoặc cụm từ được sử dụng để liên kết từ 2 từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề lại với nhau nhằm tạo sự

liên kết hoặc cấu trúc câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Liên từ kết hợp

Dùng để liên kết các từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề có cùng chức năng ngữ pháp (nối danh từ với danh từ, tính từ với tính từ,...). Các liên từ kết hợp thường được viết tắt là FANBOYS (for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so)

Liên từ	Nghĩa	Ví dụ
For	vì	<i>I hit the gym every weekend, for they discount the price.</i>
And	và	<i>She has one daughter and two sons.</i>
Nor	cũng không	<i>Linda was not happy, nor was she upset.</i>
But	nhưng	<i>I want to eat Italian food, but my husband wants Chinese</i>
Or	hoặc	<i>Would you like a cup of tea or coffee?</i>
Yet	nhưng	<i>They like apples, yet they don't like oranges.</i>
So	nên	<i>You must get up early tomorrow, so don't stay up late.</i>

Một số liên từ kết hợp như for, yet thường được dùng trong văn phong trang trọng hơn là lời nói thường ngày.

2. Liên từ tương quan

Là những liên từ thường đi theo cặp và nối những từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề có cùng chức năng ngữ pháp.

Liên từ	Nghĩa	Ví dụ
Both... and	Cả ... và ... (cả hai đều)	<i>He is both smart and hard-working</i>
Either... or	Hoặc... hoặc ... (một trong hai)	<i>You can sit either on this side or on the other.</i>
Neither... nor	Cả... và đều không (cả hai đều không)	<i>Neither cats nor dogs like chocolate.</i>
Not only ... but also	Không những ... mà còn	<i>She can not only dance but also sing so well.</i>

3. Liên từ phụ thuộc

Là liên từ thường đứng trước từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề phụ thuộc và nối chúng với mệnh đề chính của câu.

Liên từ	Nghĩa
Before	Trước
After	Sau
As soon as	Ngay sau khi
When	Khi
While	Trong khi
Until	Cho đến khi
Although/Though/Even though + S + V, S + V (= In spite of/Despite + N/V-ing, S + V)	Mặc dù
* However/Nevertheless	Tuy nhiên

* Therefore/as a result/consequently	Vì vậy
Because/Since/As + S + V, S + V (= Because of/Due to/Owing to + N/V-ing, S + V)	Bởi vì
So that/In order that + S + V, S + V (so as to/in order to + V, S + V)	Để
As long as	Miễn là
In case + S + V, S + V = (In case of + N/V-ing, S + v	Trong trường hợp/ phòng khi
* Instead (= Instead of + N/V-ing)	Thay vì
Unless	Trừ khi
Only if	Chỉ khi
Even if	Kể cả khi
* Besides/Additionally/In addition / Moreover / Futhermore	Bên cạnh đó/thêm vào đó
*Otherwise/Or else	Nếu không thì

★ Lưu ý: Những từ có dấu * (và những từ cùng nhóm với nó trong bảng trên) là trạng từ liên kết. Khi đứng ở đầu câu, nó sẽ được ngăn cách với mệnh đề bằng dấu phẩy; khi đứng ở giữa câu, nó sẽ đứng sau dấu chấm phẩy và theo sau bởi dấu phẩy.

Ví dụ:

+ The homework was so difficult. However, they completed it ahead of time.

+ He needed to finish the project by Friday; otherwise, he would face penalties.

4. Cách viết lại câu với các liên từ

➤ **Both ... and:** Tìm điểm khác nhau giữa hai câu, vẽ câu và sắp xếp lần lượt điểm khác nhau vào both...and. Viết lại phần giống nhau sao cho đúng cấu trúc và thì.

Ví dụ:

I like classical music. Tom also likes classical music.

Khác giống khác giống

(Tôi thích nhạc cổ điển. Cô ấy cũng thích nhạc cổ điển.)

→ Both I and Tom like classical music.

➤ **Either ... or/Neither ... nor:** Tìm điểm khác nhau và sắp xếp lần lượt vào 2 cấu trúc. Lưu ý rằng **either ... or** đi với câu phủ định còn **neither ... nor** đi với câu khẳng định.

Ví dụ:

He didn't text me and he didn't phone me yesterday.

khác khác

(Anh ấy không nhắn tin hay gọi cho tôi vào hôm qua.)

→ He didn't either text or phone me yesterday.

→ He neither texted nor phoned me yesterday.

➤ **Although/Even though/Though + S + V, S + V: Mặc dù**

= In spite of/Despite + N/V-ing

- Nếu hai mệnh đề đồng chủ ngữ ta dùng V-ing sau **In spite of/Despite**
- Nếu hai mệnh đề khác chủ ngữ, ta cần biến mệnh đề thành danh từ, cụm danh từ đồng nghĩa

Ví dụ:

Although he won the race, he didn't receive any medals. (*Đồng chủ ngữ he*)

→ Despite winning the race, he didn't receive any medals.

Though her story was very interesting, everyone was so sleepy. (*Khác chủ ngữ*)

→ In spite of her interesting story, everyone was so sleepy.

➤ Because/As/Since + S + V, S + V: Bởi vì

= Because of/Due to/Owing to 4- N/V-ing

Áp dụng tương tự như trường hợp của **although/even though/though** bên trên.

Ví dụ:

She didn't go to work yesterday because she was sick. (*Đồng chủ ngữ.*)

→ She didn't go to work yesterday because of being sick.

Because the weather was bad, we canceled the picnic. (*Khác chủ ngữ*)

→ Because of the bad weather, we canceled the picnic.

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5254] - Tra ID Video [5255]

Question 1 [573580]: English is not only spoken in the United States _____ it is also the primary language of business and diplomacy.

- A. but B. and C. so D. because

Question 2 [573581]: Deforestation continues to be a major issue _____ it leads to loss of biodiversity.

- A. although B. due to C. however D. because

Question 3 [573582]: Some people really enjoy mountain climbing; _____, others are afraid of height.

- A. while B. but C. however D. in spite of

Question 4 [573583]: My family really loves Vietnamese food, _____ we order it twice a week.

- A. or B. so C. but D. nor

Question 5 [573584]: She really wanted to apply for the manager position _____ she lacked the required experience.

- A. so B. but C. and D. or

Question 6 [573585]: _____ extremely bad weather in the mountains, we're no longer considering our skiing trip.

- A. Due to B. Because C. Since D. Although

Question 7 [573586]: The store will remain open _____ midnight for the holiday sale.

- A. before B. until C. despite D. so

Question 8 [573587]: _____ I enjoy baking desserts, I rarely have time to do it during the week.

- A. While B. Despite C. Because D. Although

Question 9 [573588]: After his grandfather passed away, he rarely smile _____ laugh.

- A. but B. for C. or D. and

Question 10 [573589]: _____ many local artisans use traditional techniques, others incorporate modern methods.

- A. Although B. Since C. Because D. While

Question 11 [573590]: I will ask Rachel to run the office while I'm gone _____ you come back.

- A. unless B. since C. although D. therefore

Question 12 [573591]: _____ public transportation systems in cities have improved, their congestion remains a significant issue.

- A. When B. Even though C. Since D. Due to

Question 13 [573592]: We have invited Mrs. Hoa, _____ she may decide what to come.

- A. so B. but C. therefore D. moreover

Question 14 [573593]: I will wait for Lan here _____ it stops raining.

- A. for B. since C. by D. until

Question 15 [573594]: _____ cities are crowded, many people prefer to live there because they can approach convenient public amenities.

- A. Because B. Only if C. Even if D. Unless

Question 16 [573595]: He managed to finish the marathon _____ having twisted his ankle halfway through the race.

- A. despite B. although C. in spite D. though

Question 17 [573596]: Tom wanted to go to the beach _____ his friends preferred to stay home watch movies.

- A. and/and B. but/and C. so/but D. because/but

Question 18 [573597]: She turned off the lights _____ she could save electricity.

- A. in order to B. in addition C. so that D. as long as

Question 19 [573598]: They planned to travel next week; _____, they might have to postpone their trip.

- A. therefore B. as a result C. however D. as soon as

Question 20 [573599]: We couldn't play soccer outside in this weather condition. _____, we can play board games inside.

- A. Instead B. Unless C. In case D. Only if

Question 21 [573600]: Televisions _____ computers are dominating our daily life.

A. or B. and C. nor D. for

Question 22 [573601]: Sarah can join us for the trip _____ she finishes her presentation on time.

A. because B. even if C. as long as D. therefore

Question 23 [573602]: The new restaurant serves _____ traditional Italian pasta dishes _____ hamburgers.

A. both/and B. either/or C. neither/nor D. both/or

Question 24 [573603]: _____ beautiful tourist attractions, Paris is famous for its food culture.

A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. Besides

Question 25 [573604]: Louis often takes the plane to Europe on his business _____ hating flying.

A. because B. in spite of C. although D. because of

Question 26 [573605]: It was raining outside, and Tom brought his raincoat with him _____ he wouldn't get wet.

A. in case B. so that C. therefore D. but

Question 27 [573606]: _____ the storm had passed, they went outside to assess the damage.

A. After B. If C. Though D. Until

Question 28 [573607]: Please fasten your seatbelt _____ you drive!

A. when B. after C. as soon as D. as long as

Question 29 [573608]: The weather was forecasted to be rainy all day; _____, we decided to cancel the outdoor event.

A. so B. however C. therefore D. although

Question 30 [573609]: I have two beautiful dresses. I should choose _____ the red dress _____ the blue one for the party.

A. neither/nor B. both/and C. either/or D. neither/or

Question 31 [573610]: _____ the loud noise outside, she managed to concentrate on her work.

A. Despite B. Despite of C. In spite D. Although

Question 32 [573611]: _____ his fear of water, he couldn't enjoy surfing on the most beautiful beach on this vacation.

A. Because B. Due to C. Since D. In spite of

Question 33 [573612]: She has written the phone number down for you, _____ you forget the password.

A. so as to B. therefore C. in case D. in order that

Question 34 [573613]: Michael prepared so hard for the interview; _____, he didn't pass.

A. but B. therefore C. so D. however

Question 35 [573614]: I didn't understand the instructions _____ she explained them again.

A. before B. until C. although D. however

Question 36 [573615]: She doesn't mind working overtime _____ she's paid for it.

A. as long as B. as soon as C. as a result D. as well as

Question 37 [573616]: _____ Taylor became famous, she shouldn't ignore her old friends.

A. If B. Even if C. Even though D. Due to

Question 38 [573617]: I am watching TV, _____ my sister is playing in the garden and my mom is cooking dinner.

A. when B. while C. before D. until

Question 39 [573618]: He could find _____ his glasses _____ his car keys. What a terrible holiday!

A. either/or B. neither/nor C. both/and D. not only/but also

Question 40 [573619]: It rained yesterday _____ the weather forecast had predicted there would be sunny weather.

A. however B. even though C. in spite of D. because

Exercise 2. Rewrite the following sentences in such a way that have the same meaning as the given ones with the words in the brackets.

Tra ID Đè [5256] - Tra ID Video [5257]

Question 1 [573620]: In spite of taking a taxi, he still arrived late for the concert. **(ALTHOUGH)**
→

Question 2 [573621]: Long forgot to bring the raincoat, so he got wet. **(BECAUSE)**
→

Question 3 [573622]: Laura doesn't like orange juice. She also doesn't like lemonade. **(NEITHER)**
→

Question 4 [573623]: Don't eat too much sugar. Otherwise, you will become obese. **(UNLESS)**
→

Question 5 [573624]: The children were very tired, but they tried to finish the homework. **(THOUGH)**
→

Question 6 [573625]: He gained weight because he ate a lot of fast food. **(BECAUSE OF)**
→

Question 7 [573626]: Jake on a vacation and so does Jordan. **(BOTH)**

→

Question 8 [573627]: Although she is not good at English, she still tries to talk with native speakers. **(DESPITE)**

→

Question 9 [573628]: The roads are slippery. We should drive carefully. **(BECAUSE OF)**

→

Question 10 [573629]: Mr. Smith first met his wife during his stay in New York. **(WHILE)**

→

Question 11 [573630]: His leg was broken. He still tried to go to school. **(IN SPITE OF)**

Question 12 [573631]: Anna was late for the interview. Her car broke down on the way. **(BECAUSE)**

→

Question 13 [573632]: Because Tom didn't prepare for the exam, he failed it. **(BECAUSE OF)**

→

Question 14 [573633]: Peter will buy 2 kilos of rice. He will also buy 5 kilos of sugar. **(NOT ONLY)**

→

Question 15 [573634]: They didn't remember to bring the passport. They also forgot to bring the suitcases. **(EITHER)**

→

Question 16 [573635]: Despite not being famous as a singer, he succeeded in being an actor. **(EVEN THOUGH)**

→

Question 17 [573636]: She is poor but everyone in the class respects her for her effort. **(DESPITE)**

→

Question 18 [573637]: Because of being lazy, I missed an important deadline. **(BECAUSE)**

→

Question 19 [573638]: My husband neither washed the dishes nor cleaned the room. **(EITHER)**

→

Question 20 [573639]: The substance is very toxic. Protective clothing must be worn at all times. **(AS)**

→

Chuyên đề XVIII DANH ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU GERUND AND TO - INFINITIVE LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. DANH ĐỘNG TỪ (V-ING)

Danh động từ có dạng V-ing, có cấu trúc là động từ nhưng lại có chức năng như danh từ.

1. Làm chủ ngữ

Khi danh động từ làm chủ ngữ, ta coi đó là một chủ ngữ số ít

Ví dụ:

Doing arts and crafts requires a lot of skills. (*Làm đồ thủ công mỹ nghệ đòi hỏi rất nhiều kỹ năng.*)

2. Làm tân ngữ

Ví dụ:

The man denied stealing my purse. (*Người đàn ông đã phủ nhận ăn trộm ví của tôi.*)

Bảng dưới đây liệt kê một số từ đi theo sau bởi một danh động từ làm tân ngữ

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	admit + V-ing	thừa nhận
2	avoid + V-ing	tránh
3	consider + V-ing	cân nhắc
4	delay + V-ing	trì hoãn
5	deny + V-ing	phủ nhận
6	enjoy + V-ing	thích
7	fancy + V-ing	yêu thích
8	finish + V-ing	kết thúc
9	practice + V-ing	luyện tập
10	suggest + V-ing	gợi ý

3. Trong các cấu trúc

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	be busy + V-ing	bận làm gì
2	be keen on + V-ing = be fond of + V-ing = be interested in + V-ing	yêu thích cái gì
3	be/get used to + V-ing	trở nên quen với làm gì
4	do/would you mind + V-ing	bạn có phiền làm gì
5	have difficulty in + V-ing	có khó khăn làm gì
6	look forward to + V-ing	mong đợi điều gì

7	prefer V-ing to V-ing	thích cái gì hơn cái gì
---	-----------------------	-------------------------

II. ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU CÓ TO (TO-V)

1. Làm chủ ngữ

Ví dụ:

To study this program takes a lot of time. (Theo học chương trình này tốn rất nhiều thời gian.)

2. Làm tân ngữ

Ví dụ:

I would like to drink a cup of tea. (Tôi muốn uống một cốc trà.)

Động từ nguyên thể làm tân ngữ đứng sau các động từ sau

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	afford + to V	có khả năng chi trả
2	agree + to V	đồng ý
3	ask + to V	yêu cầu
4	decide + to V	quyết định
5	expect + to V	mong đợi
6	hope + to V	hi vọng
7	learn + to V	học
8	manage + to V	xoay sở
9	offer + to V	đưa ra
10	plan + to V	lên kế hoạch
11	promise + to V	hứa
12	want + to V	muốn
13	wish + to V	ước

3. Dùng diễn tả cảm xúc dùng sau một số tính từ

Ví dụ:

Nice to meet you here. (Rất vui khi gặp bạn ở đây.)

I'm ready to see him again. (Tôi đã sẵn sàng gặp lại anh ta.)

4. Làm bổ ngữ cho tân ngữ, đứng sau cấu trúc động từ + tân ngữ

Ví dụ:

The doctor advised her to stay in bed so she can take a rest. (Bác sĩ khuyên cô ấy nằm trên giường để cô ấy có thể nghỉ ngơi.)

Dưới đây là một số cấu trúc dùng to - infinitive như một bổ ngữ cho tân ngữ

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	advise sb to V	khuyên ai làm gì
2	allow sb to V	cho phép ai làm gì
3	ask sb to V	yêu cầu ai làm gì

4	enable sb/sth to V	cho ai/cái gì có khả năng làm gì
5	encourage sb to V	khuyến khích ai làm gì
6	expect sb to V	mong đợi ai làm gì
7	force sb to V	ép buộc, cưỡng ép ai làm gì
8	invite sb to V	mời ai làm gì
9	promise sb to V	hứa với ai làm gì
10	remind sb to V	nhắc nhở ai làm gì
11	want sb to V	muốn ai làm gì
12	warn sb (not) to V	cảnh báo ai (không) làm gì

III. ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU KHÔNG TO

1. Sau các động từ let, make, help, see, hear, watch + tân ngữ.

Ví dụ:

Let me open the door for you. (*Để tôi mở cửa cho bạn.*)

Technology helps our life become more convenient. (*Công nghệ giúp cuộc sống của chúng ta thuận tiện hơn.*)

2. Sau động từ khuyết thiếu

Ví dụ:

You have to obey traffic rules. (*Bạn phải tuân theo luật lệ giao thông.*)

IV. NHỮNG ĐỘNG TỪ ĐI VỚI CẢ DANH ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU

1. Remember + to V / V

remember + to V: nhớ phải làm gì remember

remember + V-ing: nhớ đã làm gì

Ví dụ:

+ She remembers to lock the door before going to sleep. (*Cô ấy nhớ phải khóa cửa trước khi đi ngủ. - chưa khóa nhưng nhớ phải khóa.*)

+ She remembers locking the door before going to work. (*Cô ấy nhớ đã khóa cửa trước khi đi làm. - đã khóa rồi và nhớ đã làm điều đó.*)

2. forget + to V/V

forget + to V: quên phải làm gì

forget V + V-ing: quên đã làm gì

Ví dụ:

+ Helena forgot to fix the microphone for the meeting. (*Helena đã quên phải sửa mi-crô cho cuộc họp.*)

+ I forgot sending the postcard today. (*Tôi quên việc gửi bưu thiếp ngày hôm nay.*)

3. regret + to V / V

regret + to V: tiếc phải làm gì

regret + V-ing: hối tiếc đã làm gì

Ví dụ:

- + I regret to inform you that you are not chosen. (*Tôi tiếc phải thông báo rằng bạn không được chọn.*)
- + Joan regrets not saying the farewell to her friend. (*Joan hối tiếc đã không nói lời tạm biệt với bạn của cô ấy.*)

4. try + to V/ V

try + to V: cố gắng làm gì

try + V-ing: thử làm gì

Ví dụ:

- + Andrew tries to finish the project as soon as possible. (*Andrew cố gắng hoàn thành dự án càng sớm càng tốt.*)
- + She tries planting a tree. (*Cô ấy thử trồng một cái cây.*)

5. try + to V/V

stop + to V: dừng lại để làm gì

stop + V-ing: dừng lại (việc đang làm)

Ví dụ:

- + He stopped smoking three years ago. (*Anh ta dừng hút thuốc ba năm trước.*)
- + Pam stops to drink some water before going on. (*Pam dừng lại để uống nước trước khi đi tiếp.*)

6. see/hear + sb + V/V-ing

see/hear + sb + V: nhìn/nghe hết sự việc gì

see/hear + sb + V-ing: nhìn/nghe ai đang làm gì

Ví dụ:

- + We saw her fall off the ladder. (*Chúng tôi đã nhìn thấy cô ấy rơi khỏi chiếc thang.*)
- + I heard him talking to somebody on the phone. (*Tôi đã nghe anh ta đang nói chuyện điện thoại với ai đó.*)

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Fill in the blank with the suitable form of the words: gerund or infinitive.

Tra ID Đề [5259] - Tra ID Video [5260]

Question 1 [573640]: She regrets _____ (not study) harder for the final exam last semester.

Question 2 [573641]: The company is looking forward to _____ (recruit) potential candidates.

Question 3 [573642]: It's necessary _____ (review) your notes before a test.

Question 4 [573643]: Our team managed _____ (complete) the marathon despite the challenging weather conditions.

Question 5 [573644]: He's eager _____ (learn) new skills to advance in his career.

Question 6 [573645]: I avoided _____ (speak) loudly when I was in the hospital.

Question 7 [573646]: Layla enjoys _____ (paint) landscapes in her free time.

Question 8 [573647]: We can't afford _____ (buy) a new car right now.

Question 9 [573648]: Andrew suggested _____ (take) a different route to avoid the heavy traffic.

Question 10 [573649]: I prefer _____ (stay) home tonight to _____ (go) out.

Question 11 [573650]: She is interested in _____ (learn) more about digital marketing.

Question 12 [573651]: They're hoping _____ (find) a solution to the problem soon.

Question 13 [573652]: He promised _____ (return) the book by the end of the week.

Question 14 [573653]: I can't help _____ (feel) worried before giving a speech.

Question 15 [573654]: My parents are not used _____ (work) late into the night.

Question 16 [573655]: Franky managed _____ (get) all the tickets before they sold out.

Question 17 [573656]: We saw them _____ (watch) TV together last night.

Question 18 [573657]: He stops _____ (walk) to tie the shoes.

Question 19 [573658]: Jennie agreed _____ (help) us with the fundraising event next month.

Question 20 [573659]: We don't allow _____ (smoke) here.

Exercise 2. Choose the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5261] - Tra ID Video [5262]

Question 1 [573660]: Peter couldn't stand _____ at home so she went to the local park.

A. stay B. to stay C. stayed D. staying

Question 2 [573661]: Her parents let her _____ which college to attend, trusting her judgment.

A. choosing B. choose C. to choose D. chose

Question 3 [573662]: After much consideration, Liam and Mia decided _____ to a new city for better job opportunities.

A. move B. to move C. moving D. moves

Question 4 [573663]: They apologized to the guests _____ the dinner.

A. to delay B. for delaying C. delaying D. delay

Question 5 [573664]: I regret _____ the opportunity to travel abroad when I had the chance

A. not to take B. to take C. taking D. not taking

Question 6 [573665]: Do you mind _____ me with this project?

A. help B. to help C. helping D. helped

Question 7 [573666]: Despite the tight deadline, the team managed _____ the project on time and to

a high standard.

A. complete B. completing C. to complete D. to completing

Question 8 [573667]: I remember _____ that beautiful island during my summer vacation last year.

A. to visit B. visiting C. visit D. visits

Question 9 [573668]: Can you teach me how _____ that song on the guitar?

A. play B. playing C. to play D. player

Question 10 [573669]: Before the storm hit, the weather forecaster warned resident: _____ outside unless absolutely necessary.

A. to go B. going C. not to go D. not going

Question 11 [573670]: They are looking forward _____ to Japan and experiencing its culture.

A. to travel B. traveling C. to traveling D. travel

Question 12 [573671]: The company allows employees _____ from home one day a week.

A. work B. working C. to work D. to working

Question 13 [573672]: I suggest _____ a break and going for a walk to clear your mind.

A. takes B. to take C. that taking D. taking

Question 14 [573673]: The garden needs _____ every evening to keep the plants healthy.

A. waters B. watering C. to water D. to be water

Question 15 [573674]: My apartment is quite easy _____.

A. for find B. to find C. finding D. find

Question 16 [573675]: Parents often encourage their children _____ different hobbies and discover what they truly enjoy.

A. to explore B. exploring C. to exploring D. explore

Question 17 [573676]: Can you help me _____ this report before the deadline?

A. finishing B. to finishing C. finishes D. finish

Question 18 [573677]: They couldn't afford _____ the house they wanted, so they decided renting for another year.

A. to buy/continuing B. buying/continuing
C. to buy/ to continue D. buying/to continue

Question 19 [573678]: During their road trip, they stopped _____ photos of the breathtaking landscape.

A. take B. to take C. taking D. to taking

Question 20 [573679]: She tries to avoid _____ too much sugar to maintain a healthy diet.

A. consuming B. consume C. to consume D. consumer

Question 21 [573680]: She _____ waiting in long lines at the grocery store.

A. expect B. want C. detest D. manage

Question 22 [573681]: Don't forget _____ off the lights before you leave the house.

A. turning B. to turn C. turn D. turns

Question 23 [573682]: I could hear the teacher _____ the solution clearly to the students from the back of the classroom.

A. explaining B. explains C. to explain D. explanation

Question 24 [573683]: Please remind me _____ the email before the end of the day.

A. sending B. send C. to send D. to sending

Question 25 [573684]: The coach let the players _____ the strategy for the final game.

A. to decide B. decided C. deciding D. decides

Question 26 [573685]: I recommend _____ the new restaurant downtown; the reviews have been excellent.

A. try B. to try C. trying D. to trying

Question 27 [573686]: She's been busy _____ for the upcoming exam.

A. preparing B. prepare C. preparation D. to prepare

Question 28 [573687]: The team had difficulty in _____ their schedules for the project.

A. arrange B. arranging C. to arrange D. arranged

Question 29 [573688]: He admitted _____ a mistake in the report and promised _____ it immediately.

A. making/correcting B. to make/correcting
C. making/to correct D. to make/to correct

Question 30 [573689]: She's very fond of _____ cookies and often tries with new recipes.

A. to bake B. bake C. baked D. baking

Question 31 [573690]: He always tries to remember _____ his reusable bags when he goes shopping.

A. to bring B. bringing C. bring D. brought

Question 32 [573691]: It is important for parents _____ with their children about career.

A. communicate B. communicates C. to communicate D. communicating

Question 33 [573692]: The manager asked the team _____ in their project updates by Friday.

A. to hand B. handing C. hand D. having handed

Question 34 [573693]: Despite the challenges, she kept _____ the midnight oil to prepare for her exams.

A. to burn B. burning C. burns D. burn

Question 35 [573694]: They attempted _____ the broken computer on their own.

A. fixing B. fix C. to fix D. having fixed

Question 36 [573695]: He can't help _____ whenever he watches his favorite comedy show.

A. to laugh B. laughing C. laugh D. laughs

Question 37 [573696]: Make sure _____ me when you arrive at the airport.

A. calling B. to call C. call D. called

Question 38 [573697]: Alex stopped _____ last year and feels much healthier now.

A. smoking B. to smoke C. smoke D. having smoked

Question 39 [573698]: She showed me how _____ the new software effectively.

A. to use B. using C. can you use D. use

Question 40 [573699]: He's keen on _____ in local community events.

A. participate B. to participate C. participant D. participating

Question 41 [573700]: The doctor advised him _____ a rest and drink water to recover from the flu.

A. taking B. to take C. taken D. take

Question 42 [573701]: The sad news made her _____ with both sadness and anger.

A. crying B. to cry C. cry D. cries

Question 43 [573702]: The company hopes _____ the new product line by the end of this year.

A. to launch B. launching C. launch D. to launching

Question 44 [573703]: He looks forward _____ his new job and meeting his new colleagues.

A. starting B. to start C. to starting D. start

Question 45 [573704]: Mrs. White denied _____ the email about the meeting, despite it being sent to her inbox.

A. to receive B. receive C. receiving D. received

Question 46 [573705]: I saw her _____ the office yesterday afternoon. She closed the door quite hard.

A. leaving B. to leave C. leave D. to leaving

Question 47 [573706]: She remembers _____ him about the surprise party but he didn't come.

A. tell B. to tell C. telling D. tells

Question 48 [573707]: They need _____ their vacation well in advance.

A. to plan B. plan C. planning D. plans

Question 49 [573708]: Peter decided _____ abroad for a semester to gain international experience.

A. studying B. study C. to study D. to studying

Question 50 [573709]: Jasmine is expected _____ a pianist in the future.

A. being B. be C. is D. to be

Exercise 3. Fill in the blank with a suitable gerund or infinitive.

Tra ID ĐỀ [5263] - Tra ID Video [5264]

SEVEN WAYS TO SAVE WATER

- Remember (1) _____ (turn) off the tap. Don't leave the water running when you're not using it, for example when you're brushing your teeth.
- Avoid (2) _____ (play) with water. It's fun but it wastes a lot of water.
- Take a shower instead of a bath. But try (3) _____ (not spend) more than five minutes in

the shower!

- Water plants carefully. Don't water them when the sun is strong. We suggest (4) _____ (water) them in the morning or evening'.
- Don't waste food. If you make a meal, remind yourself (5) _____ (not make too much and plan what (6) (cook).
- Don't waste products. Reduce the number of plastic bags you get.
- Don't waste energy. For example, don't forget (7) _____ (turn) off lights when you leave a room.
- What other ways can you consider (8) _____ (develop)?

Topic 9

COLLOCATIONS

LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	A load of sth A series of sth A set of sth A string of	Nhiều Một loạt Một bộ Một chuỗi tiếp nối
2	Ahead of	Trước thời hạn
3	All long	Bấy lâu nay
4	All in all	Nhìn chung
5	At work	Ở chỗ làm
6	At first	Ban đầu
7	Award sb sth	Thưởng ai cái gì
8	Be aware of Raise sb's awareness of/about sth	Có ý thức về Nâng cao ý thức về
9	Be in a good/bad mood	Trong tâm trạng tốt/xấu
10	Be made from Be made of	Được làm từ (có biến đổi) Được làm bằng (giữ nguyên)
11	Be responsible for = take/have responsibility for	Có trách nhiệm
12	Be willing to	Sẵn lòng
13	Break a bad habit	Từ bỏ một thói quen xấu
14	Break the rules >< follow the rules	Phá luật >< tuân thủ luật
15	Burn the midnight oil	Thâu đêm làm việc, học tập
16	Consist of = comprise	Bao gồm
17	Couch potato	Người ì ạch, hay ngồi/nằm một chỗ
18	Culture shock	Cú sốc văn hóa
19	Change sb's mind	Thay đổi ý kiến
20	Dispose of	Vứt bỏ
21	Do harm	Làm hại
22	Earn a living	Kiểm sống
23	Economic growth	Sự tăng trưởng kinh tế

24	Ethnic minority	Dân tộc thiểu số
25	Face to face	Đối mặt
26	Fill sth to the brim	Đổ đầy ắp
27	First aid	Sơ cứu
28	Flora and fauna	Thảm động thực vật
29	Flow into	Chảy vào
30	Foot of mountain	Chân núi
31	Free of charge	Miễn phí
32	Get a buzz out of sth	Có cảm giác hào hứng, phấn chấn
33	Get in touch with Keep in touch with Lose touch with	Liên lạc với Giữ liên lạc với Mất liên lạc với
34	Get into trouble	Vướng vào rắc rối
35	Get married to Marry to sb	Kết hôn với Cưới ai
36	Get rid of sth	Từ bỏ/ thoát khỏi
37	Get/catch a cold	Bị cảm lạnh
38	Go for a walk	Đi dạo
39	Go on a vacation Go on business	Đi nghỉ Đi công tác
40	Give advice >< take advice	Đưa ra lời khuyên >< nhận lời khuyên
41	Give it a shot/go	Thử làm gì
42	Give priority to sth	Ưu tiên cho
43	Give sb a hand (with sth)	Giữ đỡ ai làm gì
44	Hang out with	Đi chơi với
45	Have a discussion on sth	Bàn luận về
46	Have an impact on sth = have an influence on sth	Có tác động đến Có ảnh hưởng đến
47	Have difficulty (in) doing sth	Gặp khó khăn khi
48	In the line of duty	Trong lúc thi hành nhiệm vụ
49	Immerse sth/sb in sth	Nhấn chìm ai/cái gì vào cái gì
50	In favor	ủng hộ
51	Learn by rote	Học thuộc lòng, học vẹt
52	Look on the bright side	Nhìn vào mặt tích cực
53	Make a bundle	Hái ra tiền

	Make a fuss Make a list Make an effort	Nổi điên/làm om sòm Tạo một danh sách Nỗ lực
54	Make do with Make progress Make up sb's mind	Dùng tạm Tiến bộ Quyết định
55	Make use of = take advantage of	Tận dụng
56	No longer	Không còn nữa
57	Off sick	Nghỉ ốm
58	Off the coast	Ngoài khơi, ngoài biển
59	On display	Đang trưng bày
60	On sb's own	Tự người đó
61	On the verge of extinction	Trên bờ vực tuyệt chủng
62	Out of breath Out of hand Out of order Out of fashion Out of work Out of sb's mind	Hết hơi Ngoài tầm tay Không hoạt động Lỗi thời Thất nghiệp Mất trí
63	Pay attention to	Chú ý đến
64	Put sb's best foot towards	Làm hết sức để gây ấn tượng
65	Put up a tent	Dựng lều
66	Put up with	Chịu đựng
67	Rack sb's brain	Vất óc suy nghĩ
68	Run out of sth	Hết
69	sense of humor sense of style	<i>khiếu hài hước</i> <i>khiếu thẩm mỹ</i>
70	set an example (for sb)	<i>làm gương cho ai</i>
71	take a break	<i>nghỉ</i>
72	take sth into account	<i>suy xét đến, lưu tâm đến</i>
73	take sth on board	<i>hiểu, chấp nhận điều gì</i>
74	take your time	<i>cứ từ từ</i>
75	think outside of the box	<i>tư duy đột phá</i>
76	try sb's best	<i>cố gắng hết sức</i>
77	under control	<i>dưới sự kiểm soát</i>

Exercise 1. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Question 1 [574334]: When you have a lot of work to do, you might need to _____ to finish everything on time.

- A. watch TV
C. take a nap
- B. burn the midnight oil
D. eat the book

A. ignore B. pay attention C. forget D. listen for

A. a work of art B. on sale C. in use D. out of order

A. learn by rote B. learn by heart C. discuss in detail D. understand concepts

A. in a good mood B. in a bad mood C. very cheerful D. extremely positive

A. on vacation B. under pressure C. in a good mood D. enjoying yourself

A. stay connected B. lose touch C. meet often D. feel excited

A. fitness enthusiast B. couch potato

- C. social butterfly D. outdoor lover

A. put up with B. get rid of C. keep D. display

A. sense of direction

C. sense of taste

D. sense of humor

Question 11 [574344]: She's been thinking about whether to take the job offer or not, but she still needs to _____.

A. make up her mind

B. change her plans

C. find another job

D. book a flight

Question 12 [574345]: She decided to _____ of her free time by volunteering at the local animal shelter.

A. waste up

B. make use

C. avoid

D. aware of

Question 13 [574346]: Even though she didn't buy anything, she enjoyed _____ on Main Street and looking at all the new fashions.

A. returning items

B. window shopping

C. online shopping

D. making a list

Question 14 [574347]: She tried to _____ for the solution to the math problem, but it was very challenging.

A. rack her brain

B. skip the question

C. forget about it

D. avoid thinking

Question 15 [574348]: When the team was struggling with the project, she decided to _____ with some of the tasks.

A. give them a hand

B. criticize them

C. leave them alone

D. watch them tired

Question 16 [574349]: Even if you've never tried painting before, you should _____ and see if you enjoy it.

A. refuse

B. give it a go

C. ignore

D. forget about it

Question 17 [574350]: To solve this puzzle, you need to _____ and come up with unconventional solutions.

A. think outside of the box

B. repeat the same steps

C. stay within limits

D. follow the traditional method

Question 18 [574351]: The movie studio tried to _____ the upcoming film by creating exciting trailers and ads.

A. make a buzz out of

B. take advantage of

C. run out of

D. pay attention to

Question 19 [574352]: When someone earns a lot of money from a business deal or investment, they might _____.

A. make a bundle

B. spend a little

C. lose money

D. save up

Question 20 [574353]: The basket was _____ with fresh fruits and vegetables from the market.

A. filled all way

B. filled halfway

C. filled to the brim

D. put away

Exercise 2. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct arrangement of the sentences to make a meaningful paragraph/letter for the following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5268] - Tra ID Video [5269]

- Exploring new destinations can provide valuable cultural experiences and broaden one's knowledge.
- Many destinations also offer activities that are suitable for diverse interests.
- Tourism plays an important role in the local economy by creating jobs and generating profit.
- To decrease these effects, it's important for travelers to practice sustainable tourism and respect local cultures.
- However, tourism can also lead to negative impacts such as environmental degradation and over-tourism.

A. c-b-a-d-e B. c-a-b-e-d C. c-a-e-d-b D. a-b-c-e-d

Chuyên đề XIX CẤU TẠO TỪ

WORD FORMATION

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

I. DANH TỪ

Danh từ-N		
Vai trò + Vị trí		Ví dụ
1. Làm chủ ngữ (đầu câu, mệnh đề)		<u>Rabbits</u> have long tails. (<i>Loài thỏ có đuôi dài.</i>)
2. Làm tân ngữ (sau động từ)		Peter loves <u>puppies</u> . (<i>Peter thích cún con.</i>)
3. Sau tính từ sở hữu (his, her, their,...)		This is my car. (<i>Đây là xe của tôi.</i>)
4. Sau tính từ		He is a handsome <u>actor</u> . (<i>Anh ta là một diễn viên điển trai.</i>)
5.		
+ Sau mạo từ a, an, the		Vietnam is a <u>country</u> in Southeast Asia. (<i>Việt Nam là một quốc gia Đông Nam Á.</i>)
+ Sau lượng từ		I just bought some <u>eggs</u> . (<i>Tôi vừa mua vài quả trứng.</i>)
+ Sau đại từ chỉ định (this, that, these, those)		This <u>picture</u> is very expensive. (<i>Bức tranh này rất đắt.</i>)
6. Đứng sau giới từ: in, on, at, by,...		I go to school by <u>bus</u> . (<i>Tôi đi học bằng xe buýt.</i>)
Một số đuôi danh từ thường gặp		
-tion	-ness	-ty
-sion	-ance	-hood
-ment	-ence	-ship
-or, -er, -ist, -ian (chỉ người)	-dom	-age

II. TÍNH TỪ

Tính từ-Adj		
Vai trò + Vị trí		Ví dụ
1. Trước danh từ		I like this <u>wooden</u> bed. (Tôi thích cái giường làm bằng gỗ này.)
2. Sau động từ liên kết (linking verb): be, become, look, taste, find,...		The yard looks quite <u>dirty</u> . (Cái sân trông khá bẩn.)
3. Dùng trong câu so sánh		Playing badminton is as <u>difficult</u> as playing football. (Chơi cầu lông khó như chơi đá bóng vậy.)
4. Dùng trong các cấu trúc “adj + enough to V” “too + adj + to V” “so + adj + that + s + V”		He is <u>intelligent</u> enough to escape from that room. (Anh ta đủ thông minh để thoát khỏi căn phòng đó.)
5. Dùng trong câu cảm thán với How How + adj + S + V!		How <u>beautiful</u> the house is! (Ngôi nhà mới đẹp làm sao.)
Một số đuôi tính từ thường gặp		
-ful	-ible	-ic
-less	-tive	-ed
-abl	-ic	-ing

1. Linking verb - Động từ nối

Linking verb là những động từ để nối giữa chủ ngữ và tính từ. Thường những động từ này không chỉ hoạt động mà nó dùng để chỉ trạng thái của sự vật, hiện tượng.

Dưới đây là một số động từ nối và sau nó là một tính từ.

Động từ	Nghĩa	Động từ	Nghĩa
seem	dường như	feel	cảm thấy
appear	hóa ra	remain	giữ nguyên
become	trở nên	taste	có vị
look	trông	sound	nghe có vẻ
smell	có mùi	keep	giữ

Ví dụ

Lia looks so pretty in that dress. (Lia trông thật xinh trong chiếc váy đó.)

★ **Lưu ý:** Một số động từ nối vừa có thể là động từ thường vừa là động từ nối và mang ý nghĩa khác nhau.

LOOK mang nghĩa là **NHÌN** khi là động từ thường nhưng mang nghĩa là **TRÔNG THẾ NÀO** khi là động từ nối.

2. Phân biệt tính từ đuôi -ing và đuôi -ed

+ Tính từ đuôi -ing dùng để miêu tả về đặc điểm, tính chất của điều gì đó.

+ Tính từ đuôi -ed thể hiện cảm nhận của một người về điều xảy ra.

Ví dụ

The film was boring. I was bored when the main character started crying. (*Bộ phim thật tẻ nhạt. Tôi cảm thấy chán khi nhân vật chính bắt đầu khóc.*)

Phim tẻ nhạt là tính chất bộ phim → boring

Tôi thấy chán là cảm nhận → bored

III. TRẠNG TỪ

Có nhiều loại trạng từ trong tiếng Anh, nhưng trong cuốn sách này ta đề cập đến hai loại chính trong chương trình THCS là trạng từ chỉ tần suất và trạng từ chỉ cách thức.

Trạng từ chỉ cách thức: Adv = Adj + ly

Ví dụ

beautiful - beautifully

extreme - extremely

polite - politely

careful - carefully

★ **Lưu ý:** Một số từ có đuôi -ly nhưng lại được cấu tạo là N, V + ly thì không phải trạng từ mà là tính từ

Ví dụ: friendly, costly, daily, manly, lovely,...

Trạng từ-Adv	
Vai trò + Vị trí	Ví dụ
1. Trước tính từ để bổ nghĩa cho tính từ	The food here is <u>extremely</u> cheap. (<i>Đồ ăn ở đây cực kì rẻ.</i>)
2. Xung quanh động từ thường - Trạng từ tần suất thường đứng trước động từ thường và sau to be - Trạng từ cách thức thường đứng sau động từ thường hoặc cuối câu.	I <u>often</u> read books twice a week. (<i>Tôi thường đọc sách 2 lần 1 tuần.</i>) The gold price goes down <u>quickly</u> . (<i>Giá vàng tụt nhanh chóng.</i>)

IV. ĐỘNG TỪ

Động từ (Verb - V) thường đứng sau chủ ngữ để tạo thành một mệnh đề. Một số đuôi động từ thường gặp như -ate, -ize, -en, -fy, ...

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given in the bracket.

Tra ID Đề [5271] - Tra ID Video [5272]

Question 1 [573710]: She answered the questions _____. (CORRECT)

Question 2 [573711]: Environmentalists are trying to _____ natural habitats. (PROTECTION)

Question 3 [573712]: Her _____ impressed all the audiences in the room. (PERFORM)

- Question 4** [573713]: His _____ ideas won him the first prize in the competition.
(CREATE)
- Question 5** [573714]: Make sure to read the instructions _____ before starting the test.
(CARE)
- Question 6** [573715]: His latest book was so _____ that it helped her become a millionaire. (SUCCEED)
- Question 7** [573716]: They are still waiting for the final _____ from the board.
(DECIDE)
- Question 8** [573717]: _____ water isn't safe for drinking (POLLUTION)
- Question 9** [573718]: She usually _____ her lower back by doing these exercises.
(STRONG)
- Question 10** [573719]: We should act _____ even if we feel worried. (CONFIDENT)
- Question 11** [573720]: She enjoys the _____ atmosphere in the countryside. (PEACE)
- Question 12** [573721]: His daughter would like to become a _____. (SING)
- Question 13** [573722]: The football match made me so _____. (EXCITE)
- Question 14** [573723]: Mr. Quan has decided to take early _____. (RETIRE)
- Question 15** [573724]: The _____ experience of volunteering at the local charity touched me deeply. (FORGET)
- Question 16** [573725]: My _____ was spent moving from place to place as my father was in the army. (CHILD)
- Question 17** [573726]: The _____ waste from the factory is dumped into the river.
(TREAT)
- Question 18** [573727]: It would have been _____ to let Claire drive home when she was so tired. (RESPONSIBILITY)
- Question 19** [573728]: The house was _____ destroyed by the fire. (COMPLETE)
- Question 20** [573729]: Pablo left the room without any _____. (EXPLAIN)
- Question 21** [573730]: The restaurant offers a _____ menu with classic dishes.
(TRADITION)
- Question 22** [573731]: _____ can lead to serious health problems like heart disease.
(OBESE)
- Question 23** [573732]: Physical exercise is _____ for your health. (BENEFIT)
- Question 24** [573733]: _____, the flight was delayed due to bad weather. (FORTUNE)
- Question 25** [573734]: It is _____ that some people poach fish in the Nhieu Loc Canal.
(DISAPPOINT)
- Question 26** [573735]: She's not only beautiful but also _____. (INTELLIGENCE)
- Question 27** [573736]: The charity organized a fundraiser to help the _____ in their area.

(HOME)

Question 28 [573737]: Her new dress was so _____ that everyone complimented her on it. (ATTRACT)

Question 29 [573738]: The accident was caused by a _____ mistake while driving. (CARE)

Question 30 [573739]: The hotel room was _____ decorated with soft lighting, plush linens, and tasteful artwork. (ATTRACT)

Exercise 2. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, c or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5273] - Tra ID Video [5274]

Question 1 [573740]: She is _____ to pass the exam. She did it well.

A. certainty B. uncertain C. certainly D. certain

Question 2 [573741]: You must be _____ when you open that door.

A. careful B. carefully C. care D. caring

Question 3 [573742]: Linda has got some _____ things to say on the subject.

A. interested B. interestedly C. interesting D. interests

Question 4 [573743]: To keep fit, we should eat _____.

A. healthy B. healthily C. unhealthy D. unhealthily

Question 5 [573744]: Students are encouraged to read newspapers regularly to _____ their knowledge.

A. wide B. widely C. widen D. width

Question 6 [573745]: The new sofa is so _____ that I could sit on it all day.

A. comfort B. comfortable C. uncomfortable D. comfortably

Question 7 [573746]: Protecting _____ resources is important for ensuring a sustainable future for our next generations.

A. nature B. naturally C. natural D. unnatural

Question 8 [573747]: You must fill in an _____ form for admission to the university at the front desk.

A. applicant B. apply C. application D. applicable

Question 9 [573748]: I like watching the news on TV every day because it's very _____.

A. informed B. information C. informative D. inform

Question 10 [573749]: Movies and video games are popular means of _____ for people of all ages.

A. entertain B. entertaining C. entertained D. entertainment

Question 11 [573750]: _____, we found a parking spot right in front of the restaurant.

A. Luckily B. Luckily C. Unluckily D. Luck

Question 12 [573751]: The trip to Paris was a _____ experience that I will cherish forever.

A. memory B. memories C. memorably D. memorable

Question 13 [573752]: The company's biggest _____ just launched a new product that could impact our sales.

- A. compete B. competition C. competitive D. competitor

Question 14 [573753]: The movie was so _____ that I couldn't take my eyes off the screen.

- A. exciting B. excited C. excitedly D. excitingly

Question 15 [573754]: During the storm, the _____ was cut off to the entire neighborhood.

- A. electric B. electron C. electricity D. electrical

Question 16 [573755]: In the 18th century, jean cloth was made _____ from cotton.

- A. completion B. completed C. completing D. completely

Question 17 [573756]: Some conservationists have raised people's _____ of rhinos' protection.

- A. aware B. awared C. awareness D. awares

Question 18 [573757]: She was deeply _____ by the quality of the presentation and the thorough research.

- A. impressed B. impression C. impressive D. impressively

Question 19 [573758]: The movie's plot twist was so _____ that it left the audience speechless.

- A. surprises B. surprising C. surprise D. surprised

Question 20 [573759]: They enjoyed exploring the _____ differences during their trip abroad.

- A. culture B. cultural C. cultures D. uncultured

Question 21 [573760]: The antique shop owner was a passionate _____.

- A. collection B. collector C. collect D. collective

Question 22 [573761]: She finally launched her own startup, which quickly became a _____ business in the tech industry.

- A. succeed B. successful C. success D. successfully

Question 23 [573762]: _____ work tirelessly to protect the Earth's resources.

- A. Environment B. Environmental
C. Environmentally D. Environmentalists

Question 24 [573763]: The fishing boat was _____ damaged in the storm.

- A. worse B. bad C. badly D. worst

Question 25 [573764]: Some of the _____ have lived here all their lives.

- A. villages B. villagers C. villager D. village

Question 26 [573765]: Despite its scary appearance, the spider in the garden was _____ to humans.

- A. harmful B. unharmed C. harmless D. harmed

Question 27 [573766]: Certain species of sea turtles are _____ due to habitat loss and illegal poaching.

- A. dangerous B. danger C. endangered D. dangerously

Question 28 [573767]: She felt _____ about the changes at work; her best friend was laid off.

A. happy B. happiness C. unhappy D. unhappiness

Question 29 [573768]: She bought an _____ friendly car.

A. environment B. environmental C. environments D. environmentally

Question 30 [573769]: The local gym had modern _____ so I used to go there every day.

A. equipped B. equipment C. equipping D. equipments

Question 31 [573770]: The oil spill caused water _____ in the coastal area, threatening marine life and ecosystems.

A. polluted B. polluting C. unpolluted D. pollution

Question 32 [573771]: I was _____ by the result of the exam.

A. disappointing B. disappointed C. disappointment D. disappoint

Question 33 [573772]: After the long hike, I felt _____ and ready for a nap.

A. exhausted B. exhaustion C. exhausting D. exhaust

Question 34 [573773]: Her speech was _____ and everyone was captivated by her words.

A. inspiring B. inspired C. inspiration D. inspire

Question 35 [573774]: The teacher's explanation was _____. Most of the students didn't understand the lesson.

A. confused B. confusing C. confusion D. confuse

Question 36 [573775]: With so many choices, it is hard to make _____ about what to buy.

A. decide B. decisive C. decisions D. decided

Question 37 [573776]: Visiting the Grand Canyon was a breathtaking experience, surrounded by the natural _____ of cliffs and rivers.

A. wonders B. wonderful C. wonderfully D. wonder

Question 38 [573777]: In 1906, the earthquakes in San Francisco _____ many houses.

A. destruction B. destroys C. destroyed D. destructive

Question 39 [573778]: I love playing in rock band because the music is so _____ from other.

A. differ B. differences C. difference D. different

Question 40 [573779]: His behavior was _____ and made it difficult for others to concentrate.

A. annoying B. annoyed C. annoy D. annoys

Chuyên đề XX CÁC CẤU TRÚC KHÁC

OTHER STRUCTURES

LÍ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM

1. It takes sb + thời gian + to V = S + spend + thời gian + (on) + V-ing: tốn bao nhiêu thời gian của ai để làm gì/dành thời gian để làm gì

Ví dụ

It took me three hours to fix my computer. (Nó tốn của tôi 3 giờ để sửa máy tính của tôi.)

= I spent three hours (on) fixing my computer. (Tôi dành 3 giờ sửa máy tính của tôi.)

2. Cấu trúc gợi ý

+ **Suggest + V-ing**: gợi ý làm gì

+ **Suggest that + S + (should) + V-inf**: gợi ý ai đó làm gì

Ví dụ

He suggests packing everything before setting off. *(Anh ấy gợi ý đóng gói đồ đạc trước khi khởi hành.)*

He suggests that she pack everything before setting off.

★ Lưu ý: với mệnh đề **that + S + (should) + V-inf**, cấu trúc **suggest that...**, bất cứ chủ ngữ nào cũng đi với động từ ở dạng nguyên thể.

+ **Let's + V-inf**: hãy làm gì

Ví dụ

Let's go on a picnic. *(Hãy đi dã ngoại nào.)*

+ **What about/How about + V-ing**: Vậy còn ... thì sao?

Ví dụ

What about taking some photos? *(Vậy còn chụp một vài tấm ảnh thì sao?)*

= How about taking some photos?

+ **Why don't we + V-inf**? Tại sao chúng ta không ...?

Ví dụ

Why don't we play football in the rain? *(Tại sao chúng ta không chơi bóng đá dưới mưa nhỉ?)*

3. Cấu trúc với used to

+ **used to + V-inf**: đã từng làm gì trong quá khứ

Phủ định: didn't use to + V-inf

Ví dụ

I used to play games a lot when I was young. *(Tôi từng chơi trò chơi điện tử rất nhiều khi tôi còn trẻ.)*

+ **be/get/become used to + V-ing**: trở nên quen với việc làm gì

= **be accustomed to + V-ing**

Ví dụ

I'm used to living on my own. *(Tôi quen dần với việc sống một mình.)*

I'm accustomed to living on my own.

4. Câu trúc vô ích khi làm gì

+ **There + to be + no point in + V-ing**: Không có lý do gì để làm gì

+ **It + to be + no use/good + V-ing**: Vô ích làm gì

+ **It + to be + not worth + V-ing**: không đáng làm gì

Ví dụ

+ It's no good using sunblock if you keep playing in the sun. *(Thật vô ích khi sử dụng kem chống*

nắng nếu bạn cứ chơi đùa dưới nắng.)

= There's no point in using sunblock if you keep playing in the sun.

+ It's not worth wasting my time on computer games. *(Không đáng để lãng phí thời gian vào chơi game.)*

5. Cấu trúc với prefer

+ **prefer (sb) to V: thích (ai) làm gì**

+ **prefer doing sth to doing sth: thích làm gì hơn làm gì**

= **would rather do sth than do sth**

Ví dụ

+ I prefer to live in the countryside. *(Tôi thích sống ở miền quê.)*

+ Mai prefers Nam not to smoke here. *(Mai muốn Nam không hút thuốc ở đây.)*

+ She prefers living in the countryside to living in big cities.

= She would rather live in the countryside than live in big cities.

(Cô ấy thích sống ở nông thôn hơn ở thành phố lớn.)

6. Câu trúc đồng tình

Đồng tình với câu khẳng định dùng so, too

So + to be/trợ động từ/modal verb + S.

S + to be/trợ động từ/modal verb, too.

Ví dụ

She likes eating sweets. *(Cô ấy thích ăn kẹo.)*

So does he. hoặc **He does, too.** *(Anh ta cũng vậy.)*

★ **Lưu ý:** Khi chủ ngữ là I ta có thể nói ngắn gọn là me too.

Đồng tình với câu phủ định dùng either, neither

Neither to be/trợ động từ/modal verb + S.

S + to be/trợ động từ/modal verb + not, either.

Ví dụ

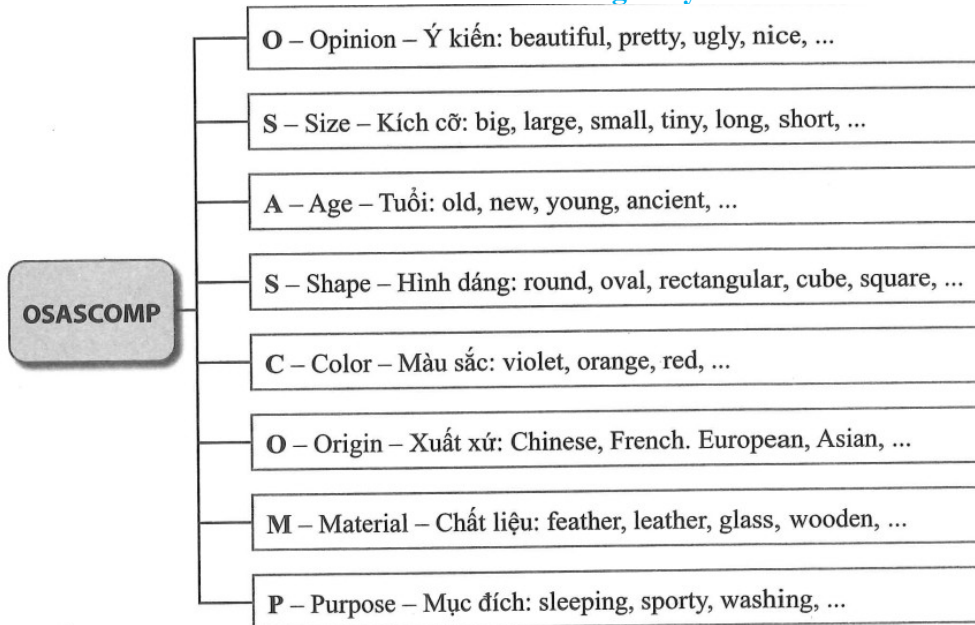
Peter didn't break that vase. *(Peter đã không làm vỡ cái bình đó.)*

Neither did I. hoặc **I did not, either.** *(Tôi cũng không làm.)*

★ **Lưu ý:** Khi chủ ngữ là I ta có thể nói ngắn gọn là me neither.

7. Trật tự tính từ

Khi có nhiều tính từ cùng đứng trước một danh từ, ta cần sắp xếp chúng theo trật tự **OSASCOMP** như sau:



8. Cấu trúc liên quan đến tính từ

+ It + to be + adj (+ for sb) + to V: như thế nào để ai làm gì

+ Sb find sth + adj (+ to V): thấy cái gì như thế nào

Ví dụ

It's really difficult for him to pass the exam. (*Rất khó để anh ta vượt qua kì thi.*)

I found this dog very cute. (*Tôi thấy chú chó này rất dễ thương.*)

9. Câu cảm thán

What + N!

How + adj + S + V!

Ví dụ

What beautiful weather! (*Quả là một ngày đẹp trời!*)

How cute the puppy is! (*Chú cún mới đáng yêu làm sao!*)

10. Cấu trúc với enough, too, so, such

+ enough: đủ để làm gì

adj + enough (+ for sb) + to V = enough + N (+ for sb) + to V

Ví dụ

He is strong enough to lift the box. (*Anh ấy đủ khỏe để nâng chiếc hộp.*)

John has enough money to buy that car. (*John có đủ tiền để mua chiếc xe đó.*)

+ too: quá để làm gì

too + adj (+ for sb) + to V

Ví dụ

It's too easy for me to solve that Maths problem. (*Nó quá dễ để tôi giải bài toán đó.*)

★ **Lưu ý:** không gặp lại chủ ngữ sau **to V** trong 2 cấu trúc với enough và too

Ví dụ

This box is too heavy for me to lift it. ☒

This box is too heavy for me to lift. ☑

+ so ... that/such... that: quá ... đến nỗi mà

so + adj + that + S + V

such + (a/an) + N + that + S + V

Ví dụ

The movie was so entertaining that I watched it twice. (*Bộ phim hay đến nỗi mà tôi xem nó tận hai lần.*)

This was such an interesting book that I finished it in one day. (*Cuốn sách quá thú vị đến nỗi mà tôi đọc nó xong trong một ngày.*)

BÀI TẬP TỰ LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Rewrite the sentences using the word in the bracket so that it has a similar meaning to the given ones.

Tra ID Đề [5276] - Tra ID Video [5277]

Question 1 [572426]: She was not able to lift the heavy box. (SO)

→

Question 2 [572427]: The exam was very difficult. Only a few students passed. (SUCH)

→

Question 3 [572428]: The weather is so terrible that we can't hang out. (TOO)

→

Question 4 [572429]: The rope wasn't very long. It didn't reach the ground. (ENOUGH)

→

Question 5 [572430]: It is very cold outside. We can't have a tea break in the garden. (TOO)

→

Question 6 [572431]: The noise in the classroom was distracting. Students couldn't concentrate. (SO)

→

Question 7 [572432]: The book was easy to understand. It was suitable for beginners. **(ENOUGH)**

→

Question 8 [572433]: John was so busy that he couldn't go to the party **(TOO)**

→

Question 9 [572434]: The joke was very funny. Everyone laughed heartily. **(SUCH)**

→

Question 10 [572435]: The mountain was high. It was challenging to climb. **(SO)**

→

Question 11 [572436]: He has a lot of experience. He is well-qualified for the position. **(ENOUGH)**

→

Question 12 [572437]: The coffee is very hot. I can't drink it yet. **(TOO)**

→

Question 13 [572438]: We have a large number of chairs. Everyone can be seated comfortably. **(ENOUGH)**

→

Question 14 [572439]: The deadline was tight. We had to work overtime to complete the project. **(SUCH)**

→

Question 15 [572440]: The instructions are very complicated. It's hard to follow them. **(TOO)**

→

Exercise 2. Rewrite the sentences using the word in the bracket so that it has a similar meaning to the given ones.

Tra ID Đề [5278] - Tra ID Video [5279]

Question 1 [572441]: Why don't you play football after school this afternoon?

→ I suggest that

Question 2 [572442]: This house is convenient for Kevin to live in.

→ Kevin finds

Question 3 [572443]: My wife usually prepared the meal for me when I worked at the office.

→ My wife used

Question 4 [572444]: There's no point giving her all your money.

→ It's no good

Question 5 [572445]: It took me five days to complete the ten chapters of the book.

→ I spent

Question 6 [572446]: Let's go to Nha Trang for our holiday this year.

→ Why

Question 7 [572447]: It took him five years to get accustomed to living in the country. (using **USED**)

→ He spent

Question 8 [572448]: This house was very gorgeous!

→ How

Question 9 [572449]: Rita would rather take some pills than have an injection.

→ Rita prefers

Question 10 [572450]: Liam can't afford to buy the TV.

→ The TV is so

Question 11 [572451]: "Why don't we change the color of the dress?" Phuong said to me

→ Phuong suggested

Question 12 [572452]: His handwriting was difficult to read.

→ It was

Question 13 [572453]: Nana spends 2 hours every day learning English.

→ It takes

Question 14 [572454]: Michael read a load of comic books when he was a kid.

→ Michael used

Question 15 [572455]: It was not worth walking in the rain for 2 hours.

→ There

Question 16 [572456]: Let's meet up with each other at the park.

→ What

Question 17 [572457]: Reading novels is such a boring hobby.

→ He found

Question 18 [572458]: Why don't we sing a song?

→ How about

Question 19 [572459]: She is an independent woman.

→ What

Question 20 [572460]: We aren't fond of reading books as much as watching films.

→ We prefer

Question 21 [572461]: It took me three months to complete the whole course.

→ I spent

Question 22 [572462]: Layla is getting used to living under the same roof with her grandparents.

→ Layla is

Question 23 [572463]: The castle was so big.

→ How

Exercise 3. Circle the best correct answer (A, B, C or D) for each of following questions.

Tra ID Đề [5280] - Tra ID Video [5281]

Question 1 [572464]: The _____ table needs to be repaired.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A. beautiful old round wooden | B. old beautiful round wooden |
| C. beautiful round old wooden | D. round wooden beautiful old |

Question 2 [572465]: John: "I think this movie is fantastic!" - You: " _____ "

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| A. So do I. | B. Neither do I. | C. I don't too. | D. I agree not. |
|-------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|

Question 3 [572466]: They are _____ nice people that we sent them a gift as a thank you.

- | | | | |
|-------|-----------|---------|--------|
| A. so | B. enough | C. such | D. too |
|-------|-----------|---------|--------|

Question 4 [572467]: Vietnam is a _____ country.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. small wonderful Asian | B. Asian wonderful small |
| C. wonderful Asian small | D. wonderful small Asian |

Question 5 [572468]: Olivia: "I'm not interested in that book." - Linda: " _____ "

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------|------------|
| A. I am interested | B. Neither am I. | C. So am I. | D. Me too. |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------|------------|

Question 6 [572469]: _____ a surprise! Everyone celebrates my birthday together.

- | | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|----------|
| A. How | B. What | C. When | D. Where |
|--------|---------|---------|----------|

Question 7 [572470]: David: "My sons have already finished their homework." - Peter: " _____ "

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| A. Give them more. | B. So have I. | C. Neither have I. | D. I finished it not. |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|-----------------------|

Question 8 [572471]: What about _____ out for dinner? We haven't eaten out for a long time.

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|---------|----------|
| A. going | B. go | C. went | D. to go |
|----------|-------|---------|----------|

Question 9 [572472]: Myra gets used to _____ over time because she can get extra salary.

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|------------|------------|
| A. work | B. works | C. working | D. to work |
|---------|----------|------------|------------|

Question 10 [572473]: Let's _____ off the meeting because the CEO hasn't come.

A. put B. putting C. to put D. puts

Question 11 [572474]: I tidied my closet this morning and found a _____ T-shirt.

A. white old Korean cute B. white old cute Korean
C. cute old white Korean D. cute white old Korean

Question 12 [572475]: Ethan: "I'm really into classic rock music." - You: "_____. What's your favorite band?"

A. I'm not into it. B. Neither am I. C. So am I. D. I'm into it, either.

Question 13 [572476]: The room doesn't have _____ for us to put those flowers.

A. place enough B. a such place C. such a place D. enough place

Question 14 [572477]: It's so relaxing _____ stay at home and watch your favorite series.

A. to B. for C. on D. in

Question 15 [572478]: You should spend more time on _____ if you want to get good marks.

A. study B. studying C. to study D. studied

Question 16 [572479]: He always wants to have _____ but he thinks he will never be able to afford it.

A. a racing modem Vietnamese car B. a modem Vietnamese racing car
C. a modem racing Vietnamese car D. a Vietnamese racing modem car

Question 17 [572480]: My mom doesn't go to the gym and _____.

A. so do I B. so am I C. neither do I D. I do, either

Question 18 [572481]: Linh prefers the old uniform _____ the old one.

A. than B. to C. in D. more

Question 19 [572482]: The private doctor suggested that he _____ to the hospital.

A. took B. be taken C. is taken D. takes

Question 20 [572483]: The computer was _____ complicated for me to fix by myself.

A. so B. too C. such D. enough

Question 21 [572484]: Kevin prefers _____ sticky rice for breakfast to eating *Pho*.

A. have B. to have C. having D. has

Question 22 [572485]: He suggests _____ to a different wi-fi hotspot.

A. connect B. to connect C. connecting D. connection

Question 23 [572486]: How _____ the paintings are! I can watch them all day.

A. means B. meaningful C. meaningless D. meaning

Question 24 [572487]: She used to _____ up quite late before having the heart attack.

A. staying B. stay C. to stay D. stayed

Question 25 [572488]: It's no use _____ her up so early.

A. wake B. woke C. waking D. to wake

Question 26 [572489]: We have _____ problems that we can't go to bed early.

A. many so B. so many C. such a D. such an

Question 27 [572490]: Why don't we _____ Lily to the party?

A. inviting B. to invite C. invite D. invited

Question 28 [572491]: Her dad promised to give her a _____ doll.

A. pretty Russian red big B. pretty big red Russian
C. red pretty big Russian D. pretty big Russian red

Question 29 [572492]: Han: "I don't play chess" - You: "_____"

A. Me too B. Neither do me C. Me neither D. So don't I

Question 30 [572493]: _____ a majestic mansion!

A. How B. Which C. Where D. What

Chuyên đề XX Phụ lục

BẢNG CẤU TẠO TỪ THÔNG DỤNG

STT	Từ	Loại từ	Nghĩa
1	able ability enable	a n v	có khả năng khả năng cho phép có thể làm gì
2	access accessible	v, n a	truy cập, tiếp cận dễ truy cập, tiếp cận
3	accommodate accommodation	v n	ở chỗ ở
4	achieve achievable achievement	v a n	đạt được có thể đạt được thành tựu
5	act action active activity activist actor actress	v n a n n n n	diễn/hành động hành động năng động hoạt động nhà hoạt động diễn viên (nam) diễn viên (nữ)
6	actual actually	a adv	thực ra thực ra là
7	adventure adventurous	n a	cuộc phiêu lưu tính mạo hiểm, khám phá
8	advertise	v	quảng cáo

	advertisement	n	quảng cáo
9	advise	v	khuyên
	advice	n	lời khuyên
	adviser	n	nhà tư vấn
10	agree	v	đồng ý
	agreement	n	sự đồng thuận/thỏa thuận
11	agriculture	n	nền nông nghiệp
	agricultural	a	liên quan đến nông nghiệp
12	amaze	v	làm cho bất ngờ
	amazing	a	tuyệt vời
	amazed	a	thấy bất ngờ
13	angry	a	tức giận
	anger	n	sự tức giận
14	appear >< disappear	v	xuất hiện >< biến mất
	appearance	n	ngoại hình
15	apologize	v	xin lỗi
	apology	n	lời xin lỗi
16	apply	v	ứng tuyển
	application	n	ứng dụng/đơn ứng tuyển
	applicant	n	ứng viên
17	appoint	v	chỉ định
	appointment	n	cuộc hẹn
18	argue	v	tranh cãi
	argument	n	cuộc tranh cãi
19	art	n	nghệ thuật
	artistic	a	mang tính nghệ thuật
20	attract	v	thu hút
	attraction	n	sự thu hút
	attractive	a	thu hút, hấp dẫn
21	aware	a	có nhận thức
	awareness	n	sự nhận thức
22	beautiful	a	đẹp
	beauty	n	sắc đẹp
	beautify	v	làm cho đẹp
23	behave	v	cư xử

	behavior	n	<i>hành vi</i>
24	benefit	v, n	<i>lợi ích/làm cho có lợi</i>
	beneficial	a	<i>có lợi</i>
25	begin	v	<i>bắt đầu</i>
	beginner	n	<i>người mới bắt đầu</i>
	beginning	n	<i>mở đầu</i>
26	biology	n	<i>sinh học</i>
	biological	a	<i>thuộc về sinh học</i>
27	bore	v	<i>chán</i>
	boring	a	<i>tẻ nhạt</i>
	bored	a	<i>chán</i>
	boredom	n	<i>sự chán chường</i>
28	build	v	<i>xây dựng</i>
	building	n	<i>tòa nhà</i>
	builder	n	<i>thợ xây</i>
29	busy	a	<i>bận rộn</i>
	business	n	<i>việc làm ăn, kinh doanh</i>
	businessman	n	<i>thương nhân (nam)</i>
	businesswoman	n	<i>thương nhân (nữ)</i>
30	calculate	v	<i>tính toán</i>
	calculator	n	<i>máy tính</i>
31	care	v	<i>chăm sóc</i>
	caring	a	<i>chu đáo</i>
	careful >< careless	a	<i>cẩn thận >< bất cẩn</i>
32	center	n	<i>trung tâm</i>
	central	a	<i>thuộc trung tâm</i>
33	certain	a	<i>chắc chắn</i>
	certainly	adv	<i>một cách chắc chắn</i>
	certainty	n	<i>sự chắc chắn</i>
34	champion	n	<i>nhà vô địch chức vô địch</i>
	championship	n	
35	chemistry	n	<i>hóa học</i>
	chemical	a, n	<i>liên quan đến hóa học/hóa chất</i>
	chemist	n	<i>nhà hóa học</i>
36	child	n	<i>trẻ em (số ít)</i>
	children	n	<i>trẻ em (số nhiều)</i>

	childhood	n	<i>thời thơ ấu</i>
	childish	a	<i>trẻ con</i>
37	choose	v	<i>chọn</i>
	choice	n	<i>lựa chọn</i>
38	coast	n	<i>bờ biển</i>
	coastal	a	<i>thuộc bờ biển</i>
39	collect	v	<i>thu thập, sưu tầm</i>
	collection	n	<i>bộ sưu tập</i>
	collector	n	<i>người sưu tập</i>
40	comfort	v	<i>làm cho thoải mái</i>
	comfortable	a	<i>thoải mái</i>
	uncomfortable		<i>>< không thoải mái</i>
41	comedy	n	<i>hài kịch</i>
	comedian	n	<i>diễn viên hài</i>
42	commerce	n	<i>thương mại</i>
	commercial	a	<i>thuộc về thương mại</i>
43	communal	a	<i>thuộc cộng đồng</i>
	community	n	<i>cộng đồng</i>
44	compete	v	<i>thi đấu</i>
	competition	n	<i>cuộc thi</i>
	competitor	n	<i>thí sinh</i>
	competitive	a	<i>có tính cạnh tranh</i>
45	complain	v	<i>phàn nàn</i>
	complaint	n	<i>lời phàn nàn, phê bình</i>
46	compel	v	<i>buộc, ép</i>
	compulsory	a	<i>bắt buộc</i>
47	confident	a	<i>tự tin</i>
	confidence	n	<i>sự tự tin</i>
48	connect	v	<i>kết nối</i>
	connection	n	<i>sự kết nối</i>
49	conserve	v	<i>bảo tồn</i>
	conservation	n	<i>sự bảo tồn</i>
	conservationist	n	<i>nhà bảo tồn</i>
50	contest	n	<i>cuộc thi</i>
	contestant	n	<i>thí sinh</i>
51	convenient >< inconvenient	a	<i>tiện lợi, thuận tiện >< bất tiện</i>

	convenience	n	<i>sự thuận tiện</i>
52	cook	v, n	<i>nấu/người nấu ăn</i>
	cooker	n	<i>bếp, nồi điện</i>
	cookery	a	<i>liên quan nấu ăn</i>
53	cost	v	<i>có giá</i>
	costly	adj	<i>đắt</i>
54	courage	n	<i>sự can đảm</i>
	courageous	a	<i>can đảm</i>
	encourage	v	<i>động viên, khuyến khích</i>
	>< discourage		<i>>< làm nản lòng, làm nhụt chí</i>
	encouragement	n	<i>sự động viên</i>
55	create	v	<i>tạo ra</i>
	creation	n	<i>sự tạo ra</i>
	creative	a	<i>sáng tạo</i>
	creator	n	<i>người sáng tạo</i>
56	crowd	n	<i>đám đông</i>
	crowded	a	<i>đông đúc</i>
57	culture	n	<i>nền văn hóa</i>
	cultural	a	<i>thuộc về văn hóa</i>
58	danger	n	<i>sự nguy hiểm</i>
	dangerous	a	<i>nguy hiểm</i>
	endangered	a	<i>gặp nguy hiểm</i>
59	die	v	<i>chết</i>
	death	n	<i>cái chết</i>
60	decide	v	<i>quyết định</i>
	decision	n	<i>sự quyết định</i>
	decisive	a	<i>quyết tâm</i>
61	decorate	v	<i>trang trí</i>
	decoration	n	<i>sự trang trí</i>
62	forest	n	<i>rừng</i>
	deforestation	n	<i>sự phá rừng</i>
63	destroy	v	<i>phá hủy</i>
	destruction	n	<i>sự phá hủy</i>
	destructive	a	<i>tính phá hủy</i>
64	develop	v	<i>phát triển</i>
	development	n	<i>sự phát triển</i>

65	differ	v	<i>khác</i>
	different	a	<i>khác biệt</i>
	difference	n	<i>sự khác biệt</i>
66	difficult	a	<i>khó</i>
	difficulty	n	<i>khó khăn</i>
67	disaster	n	<i>thảm họa</i>
	disastrous	a	<i>thảm khốc</i>
68	discover	v	<i>phát hiện</i>
	discovery	n	<i>sự khám phá ra</i>
69	economy	n	<i>kinh tế</i>
	economic	a	<i>thuộc kinh tế</i>
	economical	a	<i>tiết kiệm</i>
70	educate	v	<i>giáo dục</i>
	education	n	<i>sự giáo dục</i>
	educational	a	<i>thuộc giáo dục</i>
71	effect	n	<i>sự ảnh hưởng</i>
	effective	a	<i>có hiệu quả, có ảnh hưởng</i>
	affect	v	<i>ảnh hưởng</i>
72	electric	a	<i>dùng điện</i>
	electrical	a	<i>liên quan tới điện</i>
	electricity	n	<i>điện</i>
73	employ	v	<i>thuê làm</i>
	employer	n	<i>chủ</i>
	employee	n	<i>người đi làm</i>
	employment	n	<i>công việc, việc làm</i>
74	enjoy	v	<i>thích</i>
	enjoyable	a	<i>thích thú</i>
75	enter	v	<i>vào</i>
	entrance	n	<i>lối vào</i>
76	entertain	v	<i>giải trí, làm vui</i>
	entertainment	n	<i>sự giải trí</i>
77	environment	n	<i>môi trường</i>
	environmental	a	<i>thuộc về môi trường</i>
	environmentalist	n	<i>nhà môi trường học</i>
78	exam	n	<i>bài kiểm tra</i>
	examination	n	<i>đợt kiểm tra, sự kiểm tra</i>

	examiner	n	<i>người chấm thi</i>
79	extreme	a	<i>cực kỳ, khắc nghiệt</i>
	extremely	adv	<i>cực kỳ</i>
80	fame	n	<i>danh tiếng</i>
	famous	a	<i>nổi tiếng</i>
81	fashion	n	<i>thời trang</i>
	fashionable	a	<i>hợp thời trang</i>
82	fluent	a	<i>trôi chảy</i>
	fluently	adv	<i>một cách trôi chảy</i>
	fluency	n	<i>sự trôi chảy</i>
83	forecast	v	<i>dự báo</i>
	forecaster	n	<i>người dự báo</i>
84	fortune	a	<i>may mắn</i>
	fortunately >< unfortunately	adv	<i>một cách may mắn >< một cách không may</i>
85	free	a	<i>miễn phí, tự do</i>
	freedom	n	<i>sự tự do</i>
86	friend	n	<i>bạn</i>
	friendly	a	<i>thân thiện</i>
	friendship	n	<i>tình bạn</i>
87	generate	v	<i>tạo ra</i>
	generation	n	<i>thế hệ</i>
88	grow	v	<i>lớn lên</i>
	growth	n	<i>sự tăng trưởng</i>
89	happy >< unhappy	a	<i>vui vẻ >< không vui</i>
	happiness	n	<i>sự vui vẻ</i>
90	harm	v, n	<i>làm hại/sự tổn hại</i>
	harmful >< harmless	a	<i>có hại >< vô hại</i>
	unharmed	a	<i>không bị tổn hại</i>
91	health	n	<i>sức khỏe</i>
	healthy >< unhealthy	a	<i>lành mạnh, khỏe mạnh >< không lành mạnh</i>
92	high	a	<i>cao</i>
	height	n	<i>độ cao</i>
93	help	v, n	<i>giúp đỡ/sự giúp đỡ</i>
	helpful >< helpless	a	<i>có ích >< vô dụng</i>
94	history	n	<i>lịch sử</i>
	historic	a	<i>quan trọng trong lịch sử</i>

	historical	a	<i>thuộc về lịch sử</i>
95	ill	a	<i>ốm</i>
	illness	n	<i>căn bệnh</i>
96	imagine	v	<i>tưởng tượng</i>
	imagination	n	<i>trí tưởng tượng</i>
97	important	a	<i>quan trọng</i>
	importance	n	<i>tầm quan trọng</i>
98	impress	v	<i>gây ấn tượng</i>
	impression	n	<i>sự ấn tượng</i>
99	improve	v	<i>cải thiện</i>
	improvement	n	<i>sự cải thiện</i>
100	independent	a	<i>độc lập</i>
	independence	n	<i>sự độc lập</i>
101	inform	v	<i>thông báo</i>
	information	n	<i>thông tin</i>
	informative	a	<i>chứa nhiều thông tin</i>
102	injure	v	<i>làm bị thương</i>
	injury	n	<i>vết thương</i>
103	innovate innovation	v	<i>cải tiến sự cải tiến</i>
		n	
104	invent	v	<i>phát minh</i>
	invention	n	<i>sự phát minh</i>
	inventor	n	<i>nhà phát minh</i>
105	invite	v	<i>mời</i>
	invitation	n	<i>lời mời/thiệp mời</i>
106	kind >< unkind	a	<i>tử tế >< xấu tính</i>
	kindness	n	<i>lòng tốt</i>
107	know	v	<i>biết</i>
	knowledge	n	<i>sự hiểu biết</i>
	knowledgeable	a	<i>có hiểu biết</i>
108	leader	n	<i>người lãnh đạo</i>
	leadership	n	<i>khả năng lãnh đạo</i>
109	long	a	<i>dài</i>
	length	n	<i>chiều dài</i>
110	luck	n	<i>sự may mắn</i>
	lucky >< unlucky	a	<i>may mắn > < không may</i>

111	mean	v	<i>nghĩa là</i>
	meaning	n	<i>ý nghĩa</i>
	meaningful	a	<i>có ý nghĩa</i>
112	medical	a	<i>thuộc y tế, y khoa</i>
	medicine	n	<i>thuốc</i>
113	memory	n	<i>kí ức</i>
	memorize	v	<i>ghi nhớ</i>
	memorable	a	<i>đáng nhớ</i>
114	nation	n	<i>quốc gia</i>
	national	a	<i>thuộc quốc gia</i>
115	nature	n	<i>thiên nhiên</i>
	natural	a	<i>thuộc về thiên nhiên</i>
116	neighbor	n	<i>hàng xóm khu</i>
	neighborhood	n	<i>hàng xóm, lân cận</i>
117	organize	v	<i>tổ chức</i>
	organization	n	<i>tổ chức</i>
118	orphan	n	<i>trẻ mồ côi</i>
	orphanage	n	<i>trại trẻ mồ côi</i>
119	patient	a, n	<i>kiên nhẫn/bệnh nhân</i>
	patience	n	<i>sự kiên nhẫn</i>
120	peace	n	<i>hòa bình</i>
	peaceful	a	<i>yên bình</i>
121	perform	v	<i>thể hiện</i>
	performance	n	<i>sự thể hiện/bài biểu diễn</i>
122	poem	n	<i>bài thơ</i>
	poet	n	<i>nhà thơ</i>
	poetry	n	<i>thơ ca</i>
	poetic	a	<i>nên thơ</i>
123	polite >< impolite	a	<i>lịch sự >< bất lịch sự</i>
	politeness	n	<i>sự lịch sự, lịch thiệp</i>
124	pollute	v	<i>làm ô nhiễm</i>
	pollution	n	<i>sự ô nhiễm</i>
	pollutant	n	<i>tác nhân gây ô nhiễm, chất ô nhiễm</i>
	polluted >< unpolluted	a	<i>bị ô nhiễm >< không bị ô nhiễm</i>
125	populate	v	<i>sống ở</i>
	population	n	<i>dân số</i>

	populous	a	<i>đông dân</i>
126	preserve	n	<i>bảo tồn</i>
	preservation	n	<i>sự bảo tồn</i>
	preservative	n	<i>chất bảo quản</i>
127	protect	v	<i>bảo vệ</i>
	protection	n	<i>sự bảo vệ</i>
128	reason	n	<i>lí do</i>
	reasonable	a	<i>hợp lí</i>
129	relate	v	<i>liên quan</i>
	relative	n	<i>họ hàng</i>
	relationship	n	<i>mối quan hệ</i>
130	succeed	v	<i>thành công</i>
	success	n	<i>sự thành công</i>
	successful	a	<i>thành công</i>
131	strong	a	<i>khỏe</i>
	strength	n	<i>sức mạnh</i>
	strengthen	v	<i>làm tăng cường</i>
132	tradition	n	<i>truyền thống</i>
	traditional	a	<i>thuộc về truyền thống</i>
133	wide	a	<i>rộng</i>
	widen	v	<i>mở rộng ra</i>
	width	n	<i>chiều rộng</i>
134	wonder	n	<i>kì quan</i>
	wonderful	a	<i>tuyệt vời</i>
135	weigh	v	<i>nặng</i>
	weight	n	<i>cân nặng</i>